PILOTS AND PATHFINDERS

Oak Ridge . Jt 18

PILOTS AND PATHFINDERS

BY THESE AUTHORS

CITY, STATE, AND NATION
By William L. Nida

THE DAWN OF AMERICAN HISTORY
(Revised edition). By William L. Nida

EXPLORERS AND PIONEERS — a one-volume edition of Following Columbus and Following the Frontier

FOLLOWING COLUMBUS
By William L. Nida

FOLLOWING THE FRONTIER
By William L. Nida

LETTERS OF POLLY THE PIONEER
By Stella H. Nida

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/pilotspathfinder0000will_i1p8

THE VIKINGS WERE FEARLESS SAILORS AND WARRIORS.

PILOTS AND PATHFINDERS

BY

WILLIAM L. NIDA

STATE TEACHERS COLLEGE
SAN DIEGO, CALIFORNIA

AND

STELLA H. NIDA

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1929

All rights reserved

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

COPYRIGHT, 1928,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published February, 1928.
Reprinted May, 1928.
" June, 1928.
" September, 1928.
" June, 1929.

Press of
J. J. Little & Ives Company
New York

To Our Friends, the Boys and Girls:

Do you like books of daring and danger? Do you like to go exploring over land and sea? Do you like to read about brave men and women in all lands who have helped mankind upward and onward? Then read *Pilots and Pathfinders*.

In it we have told true and interesting stories about great men and women of history in many nations. We thought you would like to know, among other things, why these men and women are called great. Perhaps their noble deeds will help you cling to your bold resolve to do the big things in your day. For there are still many things to be done in the world that call for strong hearts and bright minds. We hope you will like most of the pilots and pathfinders, and that you will read what you can about them in other books.

THE AUTHORS

To Supervisors and Teachers:

These short biographies are intended to introduce our young people to many of the great men and women of all time. The text is not merely a series of biographies. It is built on the solid foundation of child psychology, growth, and development. We are fairly well agreed upon the following basic ideas regarding a child's history:

1. The text should be humanized. The abstract does not appeal. But the biographical approach is both interesting and effective.

2. The child demands action and movement — not lengthy description, but the story of things doing. The drama of history through biography satisfies this demand.

3. There should be abundant problems, for it is problems and contrasts that stimulate thinking. The lives of men and women present numerous problems. All that is needed is to incorporate these problems in the text.

4. The material of the story should articulate with the child's experience. He cannot think and reason on matters entirely disconnected with his experience. We have tried to emphasize the parallel between the experience of the child reader and the adult actor.

5. The child should be able to read the text with understanding and pleasure. The sentence structure is always simple, and the vocabulary well within the reading ability of the pupil.

6. There should be stimulating suggestions for child activity. Acting and thinking go hand in hand. This is provided for in the exercises following the chapters.

The biographies are not arranged in a haphazard fashion, but as far as possible in chronological order. Those of our own country form a simple outline of settlement, colonization, the Revolutionary War, the Civil War, and the exploration and settlement of the West, as well as other important events to date.

To present outstanding figures of history in a series of biographies such as this has been a far from easy task. We trust it will be evaluated with sympathy and leniency. We indulge the hope that it will be an inspiration to the boys and girls of our land and a real help to the busy teacher.

THE AUTHORS

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Abraham and Moses	1
How Men First Learned to Write	7
How the Greeks Conquered the Persian Kings	14
Lycurgus and Pericles	21
Socrates Denies the Greek Gods	26
Alexander the Great Conquers the World	32
When All Roads Led to Rome	39
Julius Caesar and the Pirates	46
Attila, the Fearful Hun	52
Alfred the Great	57
Leif Ericsson Discovers America	66
Peter the Hermit and the Crusades	71
How the English Managed a Bad King	77
The Hundred Years' War	82
Famous Travelers	89
The Story of Printing	94
Columbus Finds the New World	100
Hernando De Soto Hunts for Gold	107
Sir Francis Drake, the Daring Sailor	113
Sir Walter Raleigh and Queen Elizabeth	120
John Smith and the Indian Princess	127
Miles Standish, the Captain of the Pilgrims	134
Roger Williams and Rhode Island	142
Peter Stuyvesant of New York	147
William Penn of Pennsylvania	153

PAGE

George Washington, Father of Our Country . . . 158
Benjamin Franklin, the Man of Common Sense . . 166
Patrick Henry, the Great Orator 174
Three Brave Men of Boston 179
Paul Revere's Ride 185
Thomas Jefferson and the Declaration of Independence 191
Betsy Ross and the Star-Spangled Banner . . . 195
Four Brave Women of the Revolutionary War . . 199
General Marion, the Swamp Fox 205
Lafayette, Our Friend from France 211
Sharp and Wilberforce Fight Slavery 217
Stephenson, the Father of Railways 222
Daniel Boone, the Great Hunter 227
George Rogers Clark, Winner of the Northwest . 233
Andrew Jackson, "Old Hickory" 240
Napoleon, the Man Born to Rule 245
Lewis and Clark, the Explorers (I) 250
Lewis and Clark, the Explorers (II) 257
Frémont and Kit Carson 261
Gold in California 269
Eli Whitney and the Cotton Gin 274
Abraham Lincoln and the Civil War 279
Ulysses S. Grant, the Union Leader 286
Robert E. Lee, the Confederate Leader 294
Beethoven, the Musician 300
David Livingstone, the Missionary 306
Cecil Rhodes, a Pioneer in Africa 311
Florence Nightingale, the Lady with the Lamp . . 315
Clara Barton and the Red Cross 320

PAGE

Louis Pasteur Learns Nature's Secrets 326
Theodore Roosevelt, the Rough Rider 330
Peary and Amundsen Reach the Poles 338
Andrew Carnegie, the Rich Giver 344
Mark Twain, the Man Who Makes Us Laugh . . 350
Woodrow Wilson, Our World-War President . . . 356
John J. Pershing, Commander in the World War . . 361
Herbert C. Hoover, the Man Who "Fed the World" . 367
Jane Addams and Welfare Work 371
Thomas A. Edison, the Wizard Inventor 376
Luther Burbank, Maker of New Plants 383
John Burroughs, Teacher of Nature's Secrets . . 390
The Wright Brothers and the Airplane 395
Guglielmo Marconi and the Wireless 400

PILOTS AND PATHFINDERS

ABRAHAM AND MOSES

We are told in the Bible that about 1900 years before Christ there lived in a little place called Ur a Jew named Abraham. Abraham was a rich man, so the story goes, though he had no money. He had large herds of sheep and goats, for these were the chief riches in those days.

Now Abraham believed in one God, as we do, but his neighbors worshiped many idols. They also worshiped the sun, the moon, and the stars. For this reason, Abraham did not like his neighbors, nor did they like him. He thought they were queer for bowing down before idols, and they thought he was odd and foolish for worshiping one God. Abraham, therefore, took his large family, or tribe, and his herds of sheep and goats and moved far away to a land called Canaan (kā′năn), near the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea. There, after some years, Abraham died.

One of Abraham's grandsons was named Jacob. Jacob had twelve sons, one of whom was Joseph. Perhaps you remember the Bible story of Joseph with his coat of many colors. Joseph's brothers were

jealous of him because he was their father's favorite son. One day they put him in a pit, where they thought he would die. But before this could happen, they changed their plan and sold Joseph as a slave to some Egyptians who were passing by. Then they falsely told their father that Joseph had been killed by wild animals.

The Egyptians took Joseph to the far-off country of Egypt. Though he began as a slave, he worked his way to freedom. At last Joseph became an officer under the ruler of Egypt. While he was helping the King, or Pharaoh, rule Egypt, a famine came upon Canaan, his father's land, and Joseph's home people had no food. In Egypt there was plenty of food, for there had been seven years of good crops, and a large quantity of grain had been carefully saved for the day of famine.

Jacob knew this; so he sent Joseph's wicked brothers to Egypt to beg the ruler for bread for their people at home. They did not know that their brother Joseph was in Egypt; but he was the King's officer to whom they went begging for food. You can imagine how surprised and ashamed they were to find themselves before a great officer who was the very brother they had sold as a slave.

Joseph did not revenge himself on them, however, but treated them kindly and sent them home loaded with food and presents. He told them to bring his

ABRAHAM AND HIS FAMILY MOVED FAR AWAY TO A LAND CALLED CANAAN.

parents and the rest of the family back to Egypt. They did so, and soon many Jews, who called themselves the Children of Israel, were living and doing well in Egypt.

After Joseph had died, there came Pharaohs in Egypt who did not like these strangers in their land. They hated the Jewish tribes and wanted to get rid of them.

At last a great Pharaoh gave orders, the Bible says, to have every Jewish boy baby killed. But, among others, one little Jewish boy named Moses was saved. You must read this story in the Bible. When Moses grew up, he wanted to get the Jews out of this unfriendly country and away from its false gods. He finally did lead his people across the Red Sea out of Egypt.

After wandering here and there over the desert in search of food for themselves and their goats and sheep, the Jews camped at the foot of a mountain called Mount Sinai (sī′nī). Moses, wishing to be by himself for a while, went alone to the top. We are told in the Bible that Moses spent forty days praying on the top of the mountain, and that when he came down he brought with him the Ten Commandments.

Moses had been gone so long, however, that when he returned he found his people worshiping a golden calf, as they had seen the Egyptians doing. He was very angry with them, for he thought they knew better. At last he persuaded them to worship God

again and gave them the Ten Commandments to be their guide in doing right. For this reason Moses is called a lawgiver, and many people think that the laws he gave the Children of Israel are some of the best laws ever made.

The Jews followed Moses as he led them, year after year, through the desert. They obeyed him when he told them what to eat and drink and what to avoid that they might keep well in the hot climate. And finally, after many years of wandering, they came in sight of the land of Canaan, now called Palestine (păl′ĕs-tīn), a land that looked pleasant and fruitful. Moses himself saw the mountain tops of Palestine only from afar. Then he closed his tired eyes and died. The Jews later fought their way into Palestine and built a mighty temple in a town which they named Jerusalem (jĕ-rōō′sȧ-lĕm).

The Jews were among the first people to worship one God, as we do. They called God their Father and said that all men are brothers. They also believed that men should be true, kind, and helpful to one another.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Draw a picture that shows Joseph being carried as a slave to Egypt.

2. Draw a picture of the desert, with camels and palm trees.

3. Food and goods were carried on the backs of camels. Why?

4. Draw a picture of camels carrying food and goods. Keep your drawings in a scrapbook.

5. Write two questions on this chapter beginning with *How* or *Why*. Then ask your classmates to answer them.

6. Write in a notebook any words in this chapter that are new to you, and add to your list from each chapter.

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 1–37.

Baldwin, J. A.—*Old Stories of the East.*

Calhoun, D. D.—*The Book of Brave Adventures*, pp. 1–15.

Van Loon, H. W.—*The Story of Mankind* (school edition), pp. 34–37.

HOW MEN FIRST LEARNED TO WRITE

The Egyptians loved their homeland in the valley of the Nile River, for it was warm there all the year long and they needed little clothing. It seldom rained, but the Nile overflowed its banks once every year and spread over the flat valley, giving the farmers plenty of water for the crops in the fields. The people therefore had plenty of food without too much hard work. While many slaves did the work, the priests and soldiers had time to think and learn. They learned to irrigate the land, or lead water in ditches to their crops. They also learned to make boats for use on the Nile.

The Egyptians believed that, when they died, their souls stayed near their bodies. They therefore embalmed the bodies of the dead so that they would not return to dust, for the Egyptians believed that the soul would enter the body again on the Judgment Day. They coated the bodies with a kind of tar and then wrapped them round and round with many layers of cloth. A body kept in this way is called a *mummy*. You may see some of these mummies now in the museums in several large cities.

The Egyptians put in the tomb near the mummy all sorts of things—food, drink, furniture, and even toys

THE EARLY PEOPLES LIVED BY THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA.

and games. At first only the bodies of kings and priests were made mummies, but later many bodies were kept in this way, even those of the animals which they held sacred. If you wish to see the mummies of cats, you should visit the Metropolitan Museum when you go to New York.

In the earliest days the tomb was merely a heap of stones to cover the body. Then every king wanted a larger pile at his grave than that of any king before him; and, to make sure it was big enough, he built his tomb before he died. After a while the tombs came to be great heaps of stones as high as a hill. We call them *pyramids*. Kings were more interested in building pyramids for their dead bodies than in building homes to live in during their lifetimes.

Along the Nile River there are many of these pyramids that were built years and years ago. The largest one was built by Cheops (kē′ŏps) about 2900 B.C. (By "2900 B.C." we mean 2900 years before the birth of Christ.)

The Egyptians also learned to build huge houses, or temples, for their gods. These were used instead of churches.

Perhaps the greatest invention in the world is writing. The Egyptians were the first people who learned to write. At first they wrote with pictures instead of words. For the word *sun* they drew a picture of the sun. For *man* they made a picture of a

man, and so on. Whenever they wrote they used pictures; so we call it picture writing. They kept making these pictures smaller and simpler, in order to write faster, and at last the pictures were so greatly changed that you would not know them as pictures. They were more like letters, and they are called *hieroglyphics* (hī′ẽr-ŏ-glĭf′ĭks).

At first the Egyptians cut their pictures in stone. But this was hard work. Then they learned to make a kind of paper from a plant (papyrus) that grew by the river. They made a pen of a reed cut to a sharp point, and ink was made by mixing soot with gum. With these they wrote their hieroglyphics. Some people to-day know how to read these queer signs written by the men of old Egypt.

Now there lived in and near two cities, Tyre and Sidon, a tribe of people called Phoenicians (fē-nĭsh′ăns). They were the greatest sailors of those days, and they were great traders, too. They had learned to build ships. The Phoenicians used sails on their boats when the wind was right; when it was wrong, they used oars. You would think their ships very small.

In these small ships they went all over the Mediterranean Sea to trade. They bought and sold anything on which they could make a profit, for they loved riches. They were willing to trade or to fight or even to steal

THE PHOENICIANS WERE GREAT SAILORS AND TRADERS.

for money. Their neighbors said that they were not at all fair or honest in their dealings.

But wherever their tiny ships could go the Phoenicians went—to Egypt, to Greece, to Italy, and to the far-off coast of France. For trade on land they used horses and camels and traveled in long rows called *caravans*.

From the Egyptians the Phoenicians learned picture writing, for it was a help to them in keeping records of their purchases and sales. The Phoenicians took this picture writing and from it, after many years, made our A B C's. This was a very important thing to do. All the world to-day owes much to those early Phoenician traders for showing us how to write with letters.

The Greeks were a wonderful people in those days. They soon learned the A B C's of the Phoenician traders and even improved them for us.

The Phoenicians wrote from right to left or, we should say, backwards. So did the Greeks for a while, but then they changed and wrote from left to right, as we do. Most of our letters have been greatly changed, so that we should not know the pictures from which they came. But M comes from a wavy line which was the picture of water, and O was the first letter of an old word for *eye*. The Greeks used to call A *alpha* and B *beta*, and so we have the name *alphabet* for our A B C's.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Draw a picture of a pyramid. What do we build instead of pyramids to-day?

2. Write a sentence by making pictures for some of the words.

3. How do our pens differ from those of the Egyptians?

4. If an old Egyptian should come to life to-day and visit your city, what do you think would surprise him most?

5. Can you think of any inventions that seem more useful to us than the A B C's? If you can, name them.

6. How would our life be different if no one could read or write?

7. Add new words to the list you have already started.

8. Put in your scrapbook some pictures of the early Egyptians or Phoenicians or Greeks.

Books You Will Like

Halleck, R. P., and Frantz, Juliette—*Our Nation's Heritage*, pp. 18–32.

Van Loon, H. W.—*The Story of Mankind* (school edition), pp. 38–40.

HOW THE GREEKS CONQUERED THE PERSIAN KINGS

Many, many years ago the Greeks lived on a peninsula and some islands. A *peninsula* is a piece of land surrounded by water on all sides but one. It may have many bays and harbors where ships can land. The country of Greece was so small that there was not enough good land for all. Many men and boys had to fish for a living. They soon became good sailors and were at home on the sea. They sailed everywhere on the blue Mediterranean Sea, just as the Phoenicians had done. They built cities on many of the small and rocky islands. The map on page 15 is a map of Greece.

The great Persian kings had conquered most of the countries near Greece. They ruled proudly over all these lands. But they were not entirely happy, because Greece was still free. At last Darius (dȧ-rī′ŭs), the powerful King of Persia, said to himself, "I must have this piece of land called Greece to complete my empire." So he sent his messengers to all the Greek cities and ordered them to send him some earth and some water as a sign that they would give up their country to him rather than fight for it.

Many small Greek cities were so frightened by the threat of the mighty Darius that they gave in at once and sent earth and water, as they were ordered to do.

But two Greek cities, Athens and Sparta, boldly refused to do so. They were not easily frightened.

IN THIS MAP YOU CAN SEE SOME OF THE MANY BAYS AND PENINSULAS IN GREECE.

The people of Athens threw the messenger of Darius into a well and said, "There are earth and water; help yourself." Sparta treated another messenger just as badly. When King Darius heard that his messengers had been rudely insulted, he was angry. You can

imagine what he said as he made his plans to conquer the haughty cities of Athens and Sparta.

In order to reach Athens, the Persian army had to cross the sea in boats rowed by oarsmen. Darius had 600 of these boats, each bearing about 200 soldiers, to carry his army to Greece. They landed safely on a low, level spot called the plain of Marathon, which was about twenty-six miles from Athens.

When the Athenians heard that the Persians were coming, they sent word to Sparta to come quickly to help them. As there were then no telephones or telegraphs, they sent their message by a famous long-distance runner named Pheidippides (fī-dĭp′ī-dēz). He started out on the long journey, running day and night, hardly stopping to rest or to eat. The distance to Sparta was about one hundred fifty miles, yet on the second day he was in Sparta with his message.

But the Spartans sent back word that they could not start just then. "The moon is not full," they said, "and it would bring us bad luck to go to war when the moon is not full. When the moon is full, we will come."

Now the Athenians could not wait for the moon, for the Persians were on the way. So all the fighting men in Athens went forth to meet the Persians on the plain of Marathon. There were only about ten thousand Greeks all together, while the Persians had ten times as many—ten Persian soldiers to one Greek soldier.

DARIUS SENT MESSENGERS TO THE GREEK CITIES.

But every soldier of Athens was powerful, with strong muscles, for the soldiers were trained for war.

The little Athenian army took its stand among the hills which rose beside the plain. Below, they could see the Persian army. The Persians tried to tempt the Greeks to come down and fight on the level plain, but the Greeks firmly stayed where they were. They had only long spears for weapons; and if they went down, the Persians, they knew, would shoot arrows at them before they had a chance to use their spears. After waiting three days, the Persians set forth, and the battle was on. The Greeks attacked on the run, so that they might quickly fight with their spears, and soon the Persians were fleeing over the plain to their ships, leaving 6000 of their dead on the field. They sailed away and returned home.

Pheidippides, the famous runner, was sent to carry the joyful news to Athens. It is said he ran the whole distance without stopping. So fast did he run that, as he reached Athens, he shouted, "Victory is ours," and dropped to the ground, dead. In honor of this famous run, we now have the Marathon race.

Ten years later the Persian army came again—this time under King Xerxes (zûrk'sēz). He had gathered a great host of warriors. Indeed, Xerxes had such a big army that they could not all come in boats. They built a bridge made of boats tied side by side across

the channel called the Hellespont (hĕl′ĕs-pŏnt). Over this bridge of boats the vast army crossed into Europe and bore down on Greece.

In Athens there was a new and wise leader, Themistocles (thĕ-mĭs′tō-klēz). He told the Athenians that there was only one way to defeat the Persian host. That was for all the people of Athens to go on board ships and make the Persians fight them on the sea. You can imagine how unwilling the Athenians were to give up their fair city to the enemy. But they followed the words of Themistocles and went to their ships. From them they could see Athens, with all their homes burned to the ground.

As soon as the women and children and others who could not fight had been taken to a safe place, Themistocles got his ships ready for the great sea fight. He placed them in a narrow place so that Xerxes could not use all his ships at one time, for the Persians had two ships to the Greeks' one. Xerxes sat on a high throne on shore to see his ships win, for he was sure that they would. But the brave Athenian men, who had just seen their city burn, went madly to battle. They rammed and sank most of the Persian ships. The others sailed away as fast as they could go, chased by the Greeks.

Xerxes feared that the Greeks would burn his bridge over the Hellespont and that his army could not get home; so he hastened away, and Greece was saved.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Find on the maps on pages 8 and 15 Athens, Sparta, Persia, and the Hellespont.

2. How did Athens and Sparta treat the messengers from Persia? Do you think it would have been wiser to say "no" firmly?

3. Why were long-distance runners needed in those days?

4. How did Xerxes make a bridge across the Hellespont?

5. Why was Themistocles' plan of battle the best?

6. Do you think Xerxes was wise in burning Athens? Give the reason for your answer.

7. Make a list of some of the new words in this chapter, and use them in sentences.

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 38–50.

Baldwin, J. A.—*Old Greek Stories.*

Calhoun, D. D.—*The Book of Brave Adventures*, pp. 54–69.

Harding, C. H. and S. B.—*Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men.*

Tappan, E. M.—*The Story of the Greek People.*

Van Loon, H. W.—*The Story of Mankind* (school edition), pp. 55–74.

LYCURGUS AND PERICLES

About nine hundred years before Christ, there lived at Sparta a man named Lycurgus (lī-kûr′gŭs). He wanted his city to be the greatest in the world; so he set out on a journey to find what it was that made a city and a people great. He traveled for years, visiting all the cities and countries he could reach.

Lycurgus found cities whose people spent most of their time in seeking pleasure; but those cities did not please Lycurgus. When he found people who were good workers, who could do a hard job no matter whether it was pleasant or not, he said their city was really great.

At last Lycurgus returned to his home city and made a set of rules for the Spartans. He thought that by the use of his rules Sparta would become the greatest city in the world. These rules you will probably think very severe, but they made the Spartans a strong people.

Lycurgus wanted his people to be great fighters; there must be no weaklings. As soon as babies were born, they were examined. If they were not strong and perfect, they were put out on the mountain and left to die. Only strong, healthy babies were allowed to live.

When the boys were seven years old, they were taken from their parents and put in a kind of soldiers' camp. Here they lived till they were men.

The boys had no studies such as you have—only severe training, coarse food, and hard beds that made their bodies very strong. Once in a while each boy was whipped, not because he had done anything wrong, but just to see how much pain he could stand without complaint. He would have been disgraced forever if he had cried. He was drilled and worked until he was ready to drop, but still he was forced to keep on, for this training was to make his body as hard as iron. Sometimes he would have to go without food and drink for days or go out in the cold without clothing, to get himself used to pain and hardship. Lycurgus thought that good things to eat, comfortable beds, and fine clothing would make people soft and weak.

With this training, the Spartan soldiers became the best fighters in the world. They conquered all the people around them and made them their slaves.

The men of Athens had a different idea about making Athens great. They thought Lycurgus was wrong. The Athenians loved athletic games, just as the Spartans did, but they believed in training the mind as well as the body. They taught their people to love music and poetry and beautiful statues and buildings.

THE BEST ATHLETES OF GREECE CAME TO THE OLYMPIC GAMES.

After the Persian wars had left Greece free, a great man named Pericles (pĕr′ĭ-klēz) became the leader in Athens. Pericles wanted to make Athens the most important and the most wonderful city in the world.

Athens had to be rebuilt after being burned by the Persians, and Pericles set out to build it in a grand way. He called about him all the best builders and artists to lay out a beautiful plan. Temples and monuments were built that made Athens the most magnificent city the world had ever seen. There were contests every year in music and poetry, and to Athens came poets, writers, and learned men called *philosophers.*

For a thousand years Athens was the home of the wisest and most gifted men of the world. Students in our colleges to-day study the writings of those wise old Greeks. When our men and women study art, they often go to Athens to see what is left of the beautiful buildings and statues made in the days of Pericles. But no one goes to Sparta, for there is nothing there to see. It is for you to say which you like better, the Spartan way or that of Athens.

When it came to fighting, the men of Sparta, as you know, were splendid warriors. In athletic games, too, they made fine records.

In Greece they did not play baseball or football. Instead, they ran, jumped, wrestled, boxed, and threw a round, flat weight called a *discus.* There was a big meet every four years at Olympia. To the Olympic

games came the best athletes from every city and corner of Greece, for these games decided who was the champion of the country.

The games were held in honor of Zeus (zūs), a god in whom the Greeks believed. Only those men could enter who had a clean record. A man who had committed a crime or broken a law was barred. The young men trained for four years, getting ready for this big event.

The games lasted five days, and many thousand people from all over the Greek world went there. They came to see the sports, to meet one another, and to learn the news, for there were no newspapers in those days. The people watched the boxing and the wrestling matches, the jumping, and the throwing of the discus. There were foot races, both the "dash" and the long run. Perhaps the most exciting of all were the chariot races. Every chariot driver had either two or four horses to whirl him around the track.

The Greek athlete was a good loser. He did not make excuses or say that the decision was unfair. If he won, he never boasted of it. The winner of one or more of the games was the hero of all Greece and especially of his own city. There were no money prizes, but each victor was crowned with a wreath of olive or laurel leaves or presented with a branch of palm, instead of being given a silver cup or a gold medal. You would expect the Spartan athletes to win a great many of these contests, and they did.

There were also contests between poets and musicians to see who could write the best poetry or compose and play the sweetest music. The winner in these contests was carried in triumph on the shoulders of the visitors. Do you think the Spartans or the Athenians won more often in music and poetry?

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did Lycurgus plan to make Sparta great? Do you think his plans good or bad? Why?

2. How did the men of Athens go about making their city great?

3. Where do you think we got some of our ideas of athletic games?

4. Would you rather win a contest in running or in music? Why?

5. What do you think of the kind of prizes given in the contests?

6. Have you ever seen any copies of Greek art? If you have, tell your classmates about them.

7. Let the boys write two "how" or "why" questions about this chapter for the girls to answer.

Books You Will Like

Hall, Jennie—*Men of Old Greece.*

Halleck, R. P., and Frantz, Juliette—*Our Nation's Heritage*, p. 52.

SOCRATES DENIES THE GREEK GODS

The old Greeks believed in many gods, not in one God, as we do. They had twelve chief gods, about whom they recited many stories and poems. These gods were supposed to live on Mount Olympus, the highest mountain in Greece. The gods, the Greeks thought, were not always good, kind, and true, but often quarreled and deceived one another.

The father and king of the gods was called Zeus. Zeus, the Greeks believed, sat on a throne and held in his hand a zigzag flash of lightning called a *thunderbolt*. An eagle, the king of birds, was often by his side. Hera (hē′rȧ), who was his wife and queen, carried a staff, or *scepter*. Her favorite bird was the peacock.

Then the Greeks believed that there was Poseidon (pō̆-sī′dŏn), one of Zeus's brothers, who ruled over the sea. He rode in a chariot drawn by sea horses and could make a storm at sea or quiet the waves. Hephæstus (hē̆-fĕs′tŭs) was supposed to be the god of fire, Ares (ā′rēz) the god of war, Apollo (ȧ-pŏl′ō) the most beautiful of all the gods, Aphrodite (ăf′rō̆-dī′tē̆) the goddess of love and beauty, and there were supposed to be many other gods and goddesses.

It is hard for us to understand why the Greeks could have prayed to such gods. They did not pray to be forgiven for their sins but to be protected from harm and for victory over their enemies. If a king, before going to war, wanted to know whether he would win, he sought some sign. He made offerings of wine, fruit, or animals to one of the gods to get his favor. Then he looked to see whether the god was pleased. A flock of birds or a flash of lightning, he thought, was a sign, or *omen*, telling the will of the god.

The Greeks made wonderful statues of their gods and beautiful temples for them. To-day we think that they had a childish religion, but the tales of their gods make interesting stories.

About this time there was a man in Athens, named Socrates (sŏk′rȧ-tēz), who believed many of the things we do to-day. Many people think Socrates was one of the wisest men who ever lived. He was the son of a poor stonecutter. When he grew up, he became a teacher. Socrates was called a philosopher because he was a wise thinker. He went about the city teaching the people what was right and what they ought to do. He did not tell them what he thought was right but asked them questions which made them see what was right. In this way he led the people to think and to find out for themselves what was best to do.

If you look at Socrates' picture, you will probably say that he was homely, for he had a snub nose and

SOCRATES WENT ABOUT THE CITY TEACHING THE ATHENIAN BOYS.

was very bald. He wore shabby clothes and strolled about the market place barefoot. But though he was ugly in appearance, the people, especially the young men, loved him. Socrates thought that people who tried to gain riches were foolish. He often said, "How many things there are that I do not need!"

Socrates had a wife named Xantippe (zăn-tĭp′ē). Xantippe had a bad temper and was the worst kind of crosspatch. She thought Socrates was wasting his time, for he never brought home any money. One day, it is said, she scolded him so loudly that he left the house. As he went she threw a bucket of water on him. Socrates, who never talked back, merely remarked to himself, "After thunder, rain may be expected."

Socrates did not believe in the Greek gods, Zeus, Aphrodite, and the rest; but he was careful not to say so, for the Greeks would have nothing said against their gods. But as he made the people think for themselves, many came to see that it was silly to believe in those gods.

At last some of the older people accused Socrates of not believing in the gods of Greece and of teaching others not to believe in them. "This man," they said, "is teaching our sons to doubt our religion. Down with him! Put him to death!" His pupils, who loved him, urged him to flee from Athens, but he would not listen to them. He was tried before five hundred men, who said, "Let him die."

Socrates was not punished as prisoners are punished now. He was ordered to drink a cup of hemlock, which was a deadly poison. His pupils urged him to refuse to drink the hemlock, but he would not disobey the order of the city. At the age of seventy, with all his pupils about him, he drank the hemlock and died for what he believed to be the truth.

This was four hundred years before Christ was born; yet Socrates believed and taught some of the things that Christians believe to-day. One of these things was that we do not have to be told what is right and wrong, but that each of us has a conscience which is a fairly safe guide. Socrates, though he lived so long ago, believed that there is a life after death and that, even though we die, our souls live on. Socrates gave his life for the right to think for himself and to seek the truth.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Name as many Greek gods and goddesses as you can.
2. What did the Greeks pray for?
3. How did Socrates differ from the other Greeks?
4. Did Xantippe have reason, do you think, to scold Socrates?
5. Did the people think they were doing right when they condemned Socrates to die?
6. Do you think Socrates would have been wiser if he had left Athens and saved his life?

7. Let the girls write two questions about Socrates beginning with *How* or *Why* for the boys to answer.

8. Add new words from this chapter to your word list, and use them in a spelling match.

Books You Will Like

Baker, E. K.—*Stories of Old Greece and Rome.*

Baldwin, J. A.—*Old Greek Stories.*

Hall, Jennie—*Men of Old Greece.*

ALEXANDER THE GREAT CONQUERS THE WORLD

Philip, the king of a little country near Greece, had a son named Alexander, who had a fine chance to become great. He had one of the best teachers the world has ever seen. Alexander's teacher was Aristotle (ăr′ĭs-tŏt″l). Aristotle knew more than any other man of those days about animals, fishes, and reptiles. He was wise in many other studies, too, so that the young prince had perhaps a better schooling than any other boy of that time.

While Alexander was still a boy, he tamed a young and beautiful wild horse, which he named Bucephalus (bū-sĕf′*ā*-lŭs). Bucephalus, it is said, even learned to kneel for his master.

Not many years afterward, King Philip was killed, and Alexander became King when he was only twenty years old. Wherever he went he rode his magnificent horse. The young ruler promptly took command of his father's army. He longed to have nations bow before his power. His enemies said, "He is only a boy." But Alexander replied, when he heard it, "They think I am but a boy; I will show them that I am a man."

WHEN ALEXANDER WAS A BOY, HE TAMED BUCEPHALUS.

Alexander set out and won battle after battle. When he had marched his army into Asia, he came to a temple where there was a puzzle which no one had been able to solve. A long leather strip was knotted in a strange way, and so far no one had been able to untie the knot. It had been foretold that whoever could untie it would conquer Asia. When Alexander was brought face to face with this knot in the temple at Gordium, he drew his sword and cut it in two. That was the way he untied the knot, and soon afterward he did conquer Asia. Ever since, when anyone has a difficult task and does it quickly in a clever way, we say he has "cut the Gordian knot."

When Alexander set out to conquer King Porus in India, he came to a river that stopped his army. On the other shore he saw King Porus and his great army ready for battle. Porus had sent soldiers to guard every crossing, or ford, along the river, and there were no bridges. Alexander knew that he could not cross the river while Porus was awaiting him, for Porus' army would attack his men as they landed. Porus had a great number of war elephants near the river, and Alexander knew that they would frighten his horses by their appearance and their trumpeting. His horses might jump from the rafts into the water.

Alexander saw that he must plan to steal across. Night after night, he led his army along the river, with many torches, and raised a great war shout as if he were

about to cross. Porus marched along the opposite bank with his elephants, following the noise, ready to prevent the crossing. When this had been done many times and nothing had come of it, Porus grew tired and no longer went forth with his elephants, though he kept guards along the bank.

Then one night Alexander divided his army. One part went along the river with torches and made as much noise as usual, while the other part quietly made a wide turning, or *detour*, to a bend in the river near a wooded island. Then a great storm arose, which helped Alexander. With many skins stuffed with straw for rafts and boats carried in sections to the spot, Alexander ferried his army across in the early morning.

But as they approached the farther shore, a guard saw them and galloped off to tell Porus. Porus came forth to battle with all his men, horses, and war elephants. His elephants Porus placed in his front battle line. Porus himself, a man of great size, was mounted on the largest elephant.

Alexander rode Bucephalus. He ordered his foot soldiers not to attack the elephants till he had led his cavalry, or soldiers on horseback, around to attack in the rear, for they had never fought against elephants before. Porus at last gave orders for the line of elephants to charge the enemy. Alexander had told his men to give a wide path to the elephants when they charged but, when the beasts had gone by, to attack

them with spears and darts from behind. The elephants were soon crazed by their wounds; and as many of them lost their riders, they trampled down their own army, both men and horses. In the confusion, Alexander surrounded Porus' army and won a great victory.

But Porus refused to flee. With all his strength he still hurled short spears, or javelins, from his towering elephant. However, though he slew many soldiers, he received many wounds, and he grew faint from loss of blood. The huge elephant he rode defended his master as long as he could fight. A story tells us that the elephant then carefully knelt by him and with his trunk gently drew out every arrow from the King's body.

When Porus was brought before him, Alexander admired his great height, for he was seven feet tall. Porus came forward not broken in spirit but as one hero who is about to meet another.

Alexander asked, "How do you wish to be treated?"

"Like a king, O Alexander," Porus replied.

Delighted with this answer, Alexander gave him back his kingdom and added another great kingdom to it. These he ruled as Alexander's helper. From that time on Porus and Alexander were great friends.

Alexander, in honor of his victory, founded two cities, one of which he named Bucephalus for his gallant horse. He rode the noble Bucephalus through many a battle, always to victory. When the horse died, his

master built a monument to him and named several other cities after him.

Alexander conquered every nation that dared make war on him and became ruler of all the known world —a large part of Europe, Africa, and Asia. He was called Alexander the Great because he overcame many

THE BROAD EMPIRE OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

kings. When he was in Egypt, he founded a city which was called Alexandria in his honor. You may find this city on the map on this page. It is near the mouth of the Nile River.

Alexander was only twenty-six when he finally conquered all the kings of the known world. It is said he wept because there were no more worlds to conquer. But while he was great enough to conquer kings, he was not great enough to be master of himself. He some-

times lost his head in a temper and often drank too much. One day in a fit of drunken anger he killed his best friend. Later he became ill from hard drinking and overeating and died when he was still young.

After his death, his great empire, which was built up by the sword, quickly fell to pieces. Alexander, however, had spread Greek learning through all the lands he had conquered and had left the people wiser and better off than they were before. Do you think he ought to be called Alexander the Great?

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. In what way was Alexander weak?

2. What was the Gordian knot? How many kinds of knots can you tie?

3. Which do you think was the greatest man, Alexander or Moses or Pericles? Why?

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 51–60.

Underwood, E. M.—*Heroes of Conquest and Empire*, pp. 149–178.

Wells, H. G., and Carter, E. H.—*A Short History of Mankind*, pp. 64–69.

WHEN ALL ROADS LED TO ROME

In the land of Italy there lived in the old, old days a tribe of brave people who said that they were the descendants of a great hero, Romulus (rŏm′ū-lŭs). They built their city on some hills by the Tiber River and called it Rome, the City of Seven Hills. Around it they built a high wall to keep out enemy armies.

The Romans were great warriors. Every time there was a quarrel with a neighboring tribe they settled it by the sword and spear, for they had no such thing as gunpowder.

Once, when an enemy army was marching on Rome, there seemed to be only one way to save the city. That was to destroy the wooden bridge over the Tiber before the enemy could cross it. The Roman ruler called for some brave men to stand at the far end of the bridge and beat back the enemy while the axmen were cutting it down.

A brave Roman named Horatius (hŏ-rā′shŭs) said, "Here am I; send me." Horatius had lost one eye in battle, but the other eye was good, and he was ready to fight. Two other Romans also offered to go with him to stand in the narrow road and hold back the army of the enemy.

HORATIUS WAS LEFT ALONE TO HOLD BACK THE ENEMY.

The three Romans took their post in the road and with their swords hewed down the enemy soldiers, one by one, as fast as they came up. All the while the workmen chopped madly at the bridge. Horatius' two companions, turning their heads, saw the bridge was about to fall. They rushed across it, leaving Horatius alone to face and hold back the enemy. But Horatius was too brave to run; he fought on, slaying right and left, until the bridge crashed down behind him. Then he quickly turned, threw himself into the Tiber, and swam safely to the other shore, where his friends received him with shouts of joy.

There was now no way for the enemy to cross the river into the city. Horatius had saved the day. He was given a large farm as a reward for his bravery. A statue was also built in his honor. It shows him standing alone near the falling bridge, keeping a whole army at bay.

Sometimes there was a great sickness among the people of Rome, when many fell ill and died. Often the soldiers were too sick to fight. Now the Romans were sure that it was the bad water they had to drink that caused their sickness. They had been getting their drinking water from wells and from the Tiber River, but the Tiber was impure because many people were throwing refuse into it.

With enemies on all sides, the Romans must keep fit

by getting good water from outside the city. They set to work to bring a supply from some hills eight miles away, where there was plenty of pure water. They built a big pipe of stone underground to lead this pure water into the city. They feared to build it above ground lest some enemy destroy it. This stone passage they called an *aqueduct*. We still use the word *aqueduct*, for we have borrowed this word and many others from the Romans.

When the Romans had conquered all the tribes near by, they began to build great aqueducts above ground, for their city was getting bigger all the time and more water was needed. If an aqueduct had to cross a river valley, they built a bridge to keep the aqueduct level. Even to this day you can see near Rome the remains of these great waterways. The Romans also built big stone sewers to carry the waste water to a place where it would not cause sickness.

As soon as they began to send their armies farther from Rome to meet enemies, the Romans saw that they would have trouble sending food to their soldiers over the poor roads, for there were no railroads. Dirt roads get full of deep ruts, and in rainy weather they are muddy. The Romans decided that they must build better roads. They therefore made splendid paved roads of stone, so strong and solid that many of them are still good, even though they were built two thousand years ago. These fine roads led out from Rome

in all directions, like spokes from the hub of a wheel, so people used to say, "All roads lead to Rome."

We admire the Romans very much, not only because they learned for themselves but because they were always ready to learn from others. As their armies

THE ROMANS CALLED THE MEDITERRANEAN "OUR SEA." PERHAPS THIS MAP WILL HELP YOU TELL WHY. THE SHADED PART OF IT SHOWS THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

conquered new lands, the people found better ways of doing things, for they borrowed all the new ideas that they could use. It was from an enemy that they learned how to build temples and aqueducts.

Once when the Romans made war on an enemy that had ships, they found a ship that was thrown up on the shore by the waves. They copied it and in time

became master sailors and shipbuilders themselves. In Spain they came across a short, straight sword which was better than their own. They made some swords like it and armed their soldiers with them. They saw that the Greeks were the best writers and poets in the world, so they made the Greeks their teachers also.

Not only did the Romans use their eyes and their wits to learn what was good, but they were very brave. They were willing to give their lives for their beloved Rome. If they were needed, they were ready to die in battle.

The Romans rewarded their soldiers for brave acts. When they were besieging a walled city, the first man to climb the walls was rewarded with a crown showing a wall with towers. The man who saved the life of a fellow citizen was given a wreath of oak leaves. Those who fought with special bravery received such presents as gold collars or fine trappings for their horses. All who received these gifts or crowns were very proud of them and wore them on holidays so that their friends would admire them and listen again to the story of their bravery.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why do we not build walls around cities to-day, as they did in the old days?

2. How was it possible for a few men to hold back a whole army?

3. How do bridges built to-day differ from the one Horatius defended?

4. What caused so much sickness in Rome? How was more sickness prevented?

5. Does your city use aqueducts to get water to the people?

6. Why did the Romans build good roads? Why do we build good roads to-day?

7. What reasons would you give to show that the Romans were a great people?

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 61-65.

Halleck, R. P., and Frantz, Juliette—*Our Nation's Heritage*, pp. 91–103.

JULIUS CAESAR AND THE PIRATES

While Rome was ruling the world, there were many ships carrying gold and other valuable things to the city from the lands about the Mediterranean Sea. On this sea there were many pirates, or sea robbers, who would rather steal than work. They sailed up and down, lying in wait to capture the ships laden with gold.

During these years there grew up in Rome a boy whose name was Julius Caesar. He was a tall, handsome young man with a very bright mind. Caesar wanted to be a fine orator so that he could speak well to the Romans in their Forum, or meeting place, and win their favor. He wanted to have a high office and much power, so he studied hard and traveled much about the world of that day.

Once while he was on his way to Greece, Caesar was captured by a crew of pirates. They held him prisoner and said that they would not let him go until they received a great deal of money. Caesar knew that he would be killed if the money did not come. Perhaps they would kill him anyway, for they thought nothing of slaying an innocent man. Caesar at once sent his servants to raise the money, but he showed no fear of these hard and wicked men. When he wished to sleep,

CAESAR SHOWED NO FEAR OF THE CREW OF PIRATES.

he ordered them to be quiet, and they obeyed. Sometimes he would join them in their rough play, and they grew to like him. To pass away the time till his servants should return with the money, he wrote poems and speeches and read or recited them to these ignorant men. If they did not seem pleased, he boldly called them "dunces" and "barbarians."

The pirates liked his daring spirit and took all he said to them as a great joke. Caesar told them that, if he ever got his freedom, he would come with an army, capture them, and punish them as they deserved to be punished. At this they laughed heartily, thinking it was the best joke of all, for they felt sure that he would not be able to capture them. No one had yet captured these pirates.

At last the money came, and the pirates set Caesar free. The first thing he did was to carry out his threat. He gathered some ships and men and returned to the island where the sea robbers stayed. He found their vessels still at anchor and soon beat them in battle. He not only captured most of the pirates, but he got back the money which he had paid them as a ransom. Then he put them all to death by nailing them on crosses, which was the Roman way of punishing thieves.

After this Caesar became a great general. He won many battles in Spain and in France, in Egypt and in Asia. Then he became the leader of Rome, the real ruler of the world.

One of the most important things the Romans did for their people was to make rules or laws for everyone to obey. Many of the laws were so fair and just that some of our own laws to-day are copied from those of the Romans.

As they spread their rule over wide lands and conquered many nations, hundreds of cities were added to their empire, and the people in every city and town had to pay money, or taxes, to Rome. In this way Rome became the richest city in the world. Many millions of dollars were spent there to build beautiful buildings, splendid temples to the gods, palaces for the rulers, and fine bathhouses and gathering places for the people.

Every general who wanted the friendship of the people looked after their pleasure; often he gave them fine shows and games in the gathering places, or *amphitheaters*. Caesar spent a great deal of his own money on such shows.

The Romans did not have football or baseball. Instead, they enjoyed chariot races and deadly fights between men and animals. Like the Greek chariots, the Roman chariots were small carts with large wheels and were drawn by either two or four horses. They were driven by a man standing up, just as you may have seen men driving chariots at the circus.

But the sport that the Romans enjoyed most of all was a fight between two *gladiators*. Gladiators were

strong, powerful men who had been captured in battle by the Romans and made slaves. They were trained to fight either with one another or with fierce, wild beasts.

Sometimes if a brave gladiator had fallen, his opponent turned to the people who were looking on to find out whether the fallen one should be spared. If they turned their thumbs up, it was a sign that the conquered gladiator should live. But if the onlookers turned their thumbs down, the fallen gladiator was killed. The amphitheaters were bloody places, and we are sorry that the Romans liked such cruel sport.

Although Caesar ruled over the Roman Empire, he was not called king, but he had more power than a king. The people thought he wanted to be called king, and perhaps he did. Some of his friends wished to crown him, but other Roman citizens were afraid that he already had too much power. One of these was Brutus, to whom Caesar had been a friend. Brutus and some other men made a plot to kill Caesar on a certain day as he entered the Senate, where the laws were made. On that day they surrounded him and plunged their daggers into him. When Caesar saw Brutus among his enemies, his heart was broken. He resisted no longer but fell to the floor, pierced by many daggers.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did the sea pirates make a living? Why do we not have pirates to-day?

2. Do you think Caesar was wise in the way he behaved while he was a prisoner?

3. Do you think he did right in punishing the pirates? Why?

4. How did Rome become such a rich and beautiful city?

5. Does your father pay taxes? If so, what is the tax money used for?

6. How did Caesar get so much power?

7. How were Roman sports different from ours to-day?

8. Ask your teacher to tell you Shakespeare's story of Caesar's death.

A Book You Will Like

Halleck, R. P., and Frantz, Juliette—*Our Nation's Heritage*, pp. 108–109, 121, 123.

ATTILA, THE FEARFUL HUN

The Huns were a tribe of robber warriors who once lived along the Danube River. Attila (ăt′ĭ-lȧ) was their king. Attila's strong warriors rode like the wind, and wherever they went they struck down their enemies. They would dash up to a village, kill the men, women, and children, snatch up any riches they saw, and then burn the homes to the ground.

It is no wonder that even the brave Romans trembled at the sound of Attila's name. When a strange noise was heard in the night, the people whispered, "It is Attila, the Scourge of God," for this was what he called himself.

The Huns were short, stout people, with big heads and dark skins. They had small, bright eyes set deep in their heads, and their noses turned up so much that the Romans said they had no noses at all—only two holes in their faces. The poorer Huns lived in huts of mud or straw, but the chiefs lived in wooden houses and had all kinds of riches, most of which they had stolen. Their tables were loaded with golden dishes, and their swords, shoes, and saddles sparkled with jewels and shone bright with gold.

ATTILA AND HIS WARRIORS RODE LIKE THE WIND.

But Attila, their king, wished to have no such rubbish about him. "My father and grandfather," he said, "lived in wooden palaces and wore only plain clothes. That is good enough for any real king." So Attila dressed in skins and ate nothing but meat, which was served to him from rough wooden bowls on plates, also of wood. Still he was proud of his wealth because his warriors had taken it from his enemies by their own powerful swords.

Not far from Attila's palace, we are told, was a rocky cave in the mountains. Here lived a strange man called the Hermit of the Rocks. No one knew his real name or where he had come from. The hermit was very old, with long, gray hair and beard. To him people often went to inquire what was to happen to them. One day, it is said, Attila went to have his fortune told.

"Wise man," said Attila, "look into the future, and tell me what is before me in the path of life."

The hermit, after thinking a while, replied, "O King, I see you going from country to country, winning battles, heaping up riches, and burning cities until men call you the Fear of the World."

This pleased Attila, so the story goes. At any rate, he gathered the best men from the many tribes of his people and trained them into a great army of soldiers.

When Attila saw that the time was right, he set out with his warriors to conquer the world. Riding a beautiful black horse and followed by his great army, he

swept across what is now Germany and France, killing and burning wherever he rode and leaving a desert behind him. All the nations of Europe shuddered at the name of Attila, the Fear of the World.

When he came to the city of Orleans (ôr'lĕ-ănz) in France, the people shut the gates in the city walls to defend their homes. Soon a great army of Romans and soldiers from other places came to help drive the Huns away. They fought like lions, defeated Attila and his terrible Huns, and drove them out of the land.

A few years later, however, Attila and his Huns came again and marched straight down through Italy. They planned to rob and burn Rome, but Pope Leo I led out a solemn procession and begged Attila to spare the city. Attila agreed, but not till he had received a large sum of money as ransom.

Shortly after this, Attila died suddenly in his wooden palace on the Danube. The Huns mourned the death of their king. They shaved their heads and cut their faces with knives so that blood would flow, instead of tears, for the loss of their great king. They put his body into three coffins, one inside the other. One coffin was of gold, one of silver, and one of iron. He was buried at night with a vast amount of treasure. When the funeral was over, the Huns killed the slaves who had dug the grave, so that no one might know the place where Attila the Hun lay.

There was no chief to take Attila's place as king,

so we hear little more of the Huns. And we are glad that this is so, for they were a rough people, who destroyed what others had built up.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was Attila so much feared?

2. Do you think the Huns were really as ugly as the Romans said they were? Why?

3. Was Attila wise or unwise in refusing fine clothes and food? Why?

4. Do you believe in fortune tellers? Why do you think people go to them?

5. What do you think Pope Leo I said to Attila to keep him from burning Rome? Dramatize their meeting.

6. What do you think of Attila's funeral? Do you think that was better than being buried in a pyramid?

A Book You Will Like

Tappan, E. M.—*European Hero Stories*, pp. 10–25.

ALFRED THE GREAT

One of the greatest men in the story of old England was Alfred the Great. Alfred grew up in those days when the fierce Danes, or Northmen, were making savage raids on England. The Danes came from Denmark in long ships rowed by oars, for England, you know, is an island. The ships were packed close with warriors who handled the oar or the battle-ax with equal skill. They rowed their long ships up some river of England and landed them on shores where they were least expected.

Then they swept over the country, burning the houses, killing the people, and stealing cattle or whatever they wanted for food. After creeping up to a church or a village in the fog and darkness, with wild shouts to their gods Odin and Thor the Danes would kill, burn, and plunder. They burned bridges and set fire to growing crops. They even tortured helpless dogs and horses and sometimes children. The Danes had no fear.

By the time the alarm was spread and the English gathered a little army, the Danes had hurried into their ships and were off. The next day they appeared somewhere else and plundered again. They were too

quick to be caught. Sometimes they would seize a number of horses, gallop to a town, plunder it quickly, ride back to their ships, and sail away before an English army could gather to meet them.

ALFRED'S ENEMIES SAILED ACROSS THE NORTH SEA TO ENGLAND.

At last the Danes came to England to stay. They began to drive the English away and to settle in the land. This first happened in the north of England.

In the south, Alfred's father, who was king, had his hands full trying to keep the Danes out of his land of Wessex. He fought several sharp battles with them.

In 871, after his father had died and his last brother had fallen in battle with the Danes, Alfred became King of Wessex. Each year the cruel Danes came in greater numbers to try to conquer Alfred and take Wessex for themselves. But the soldiers of Alfred fought hard for their lives, their loved ones, and their country, for they now had a great leader who could not be crushed by defeat.

In a big battle Alfred beat the Danes so badly that they left Wessex for a few years. But at last the Danish king, Guthrum (go͞oth′ro͞om), made a sudden dash on Wessex. So swift was the attack and so strong the enemy that Alfred was taken by surprise and had to flee for his life, leaving Wessex to the Danes.

But Alfred would not give up hope. He and a few of his faithful warriors went into hiding on an island in a swampy forest. Here they lived among people who cared for the hogs of the great nobles. Their huts were of mud and sticks. Two stories have been handed down to us about Alfred's stay here. They are called *legends*.

One legend says that Alfred stayed in one of these tiny mud huts much against the wishes of the housewife, for her husband had not told her that her guest was a king. One day she bade her unknown visitor sit by the fire and turn her cakes when they were done on one side. The anxious King forgot all about them, and the angry housewife scolded him roundly.

An old song puts it this way:

> There, don't you see the cakes are burnt?
> Then wherefore turn them not?
> You're quick enough to eat them
> When they are good and hot.

Another legend says that Alfred wished to know how many Danes there were in camp. He therefore disguised himself in the suit of a harp player. Dressed in this way, he was admitted to the camp of the Danes to entertain them with music and stories. The Danes were delighted with him, and not one of them guessed that their harper was the King of the English.

You may be sure, if this story is true, that Alfred kept his eyes wide open to see all the weak points of the camp. At any rate, in the spring he came with his army and fell upon the Danes, who were becoming careless because of the victories they had won. This time Alfred's victory was so complete that the Danes begged for peace, and their king, Guthrum, agreed to become a Christian. A treaty was made dividing England between Alfred and the Danes. They were to have the northern and eastern part of England, while Alfred took the southern and western part for his people.

Alfred saw that the Danes must not be allowed to come and go as they pleased on the sea. So he built a fleet of ships twice as large as that of the Danes, and trained his sailors so well that they were more than a match for the enemy. This was the beginning of

England's navy. There are now English ships on every ocean.

In each house in England you might have seen in those days, hanging on the wall, a spear, a shield, and a sword. The master of the house became a soldier in a moment when there was need of him. So brave were Alfred's warriors that the Danes, who still made trouble sometimes, could no longer win against them in the open but had to remain shut up in their forts. But Alfred's soldiers were farmers; they could not remain in the army all the year. Each one had to return home for part of every summer to grow food for his family and for his stock. The crafty Danes waited till Alfred's soldiers had returned to their farms. Then, when they had it all their own way, they plundered and robbed and burned. When Alfred's soldiers were called together again, the Danes had gone back to their forts or their ships.

To prevent this, Alfred divided his men into two divisions, so that one half of his men were always ready to go out and fight while the other half were at home working in the fields to raise food. This was the first standing army in England. With his warships and his army always ready, Alfred kept peace.

Alfred was great not only in war but in peace as well. He gladly put aside the sword and turned to work for the good of his people, as any wise king would do. First he collected the old laws and put them in order

ALFRED HIMSELF TAUGHT IN THE SCHOOL HE HAD OPENED AT WINCHESTER.

so that all might know what they were. Then he saw that everyone obeyed them. He made new laws, too, as he saw they were needed. Alfred appointed honest judges and tried to make sure that every man had his rights and that wrongdoers were punished.

Alfred's greatest service was in teaching his people. In Winchester, his capital, he had a great school, where the sons of the nobles were educated. Here Alfred himself taught, and to this school he invited learned men from other lands to come and instruct his people.

There was much need of schools, for the Danes had done great harm to learning. Before they came, the eastern part of England was dotted with monasteries, or religious houses where monks and priests lived and taught. These were the schools of those days, and there men went to gather knowledge. In every monastery was a library of books, not printed as ours are, but each one written out beautifully with a quill pen on parchment or sheepskin by some faithful monk.

The Danes, who did not believe in one God, as Alfred's people did, had burned the monasteries to the ground, killed the monks, destroyed the books, and sent the scholars fleeing for their lives. Alfred set to work building up schools and making books. Before this time all books had been written in Latin, but Alfred wrote books in English so that his people might read in their own language.

King Alfred sent out bold sailors to explore the northern seas. One ship sailed around the northern part of Norway and Sweden to the White Sea. Another pushed boldly into the Baltic Sea, which was near the home of the Danes. Alfred sent one of his bishops to Jerusalem and another to far-off India, whence they returned with jewels, spices, and other rare things of the East.

Alfred gave great care to rebuilding the towns which had been burned by the Danes. He built forts at London, so that the ships of the Danes could not come up the Thames River.

All these great deeds were done by Alfred while he was suffering from an illness that could not be cured. It is no wonder that his subjects loved him and called him England's Darling. He has been dead a thousand years, but he is not forgotten because he used his power as king not for himself but for the good of his people.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why do you think the Danes robbed the English?
2. Find Denmark and England on the map (p. 58).
3. Why was it hard to protect England from the Danes?
4. How did Alfred manage to win against the Danes?
5. What do you think was the best service of King Alfred for England?
6. Which do you admire more, Alfred the Great or Alexander the Great? Why?

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 88–97.

Halleck, R. P., and Frantz, Juliette—*Our Nation's Heritage*, pp. 171–177.

Tappan, E. M.—*European Hero Stories*, pp. 72–86.

LEIF ERICSSON DISCOVERS AMERICA

The old Vikings, or Northmen, as we have told you, lived in Denmark. They also lived on the rocky shores of Norway. They were driven to sea to get food because their homeland was so poor that they could not raise enough cattle and grain. But the sea was swarming with fish, so the Vikings early became fine fishermen. They robbed and plundered, too, when they found weaker people, and most people of that day were weaker than the fighting Vikings.

Soon the Vikings had learned how to build strong ships and knew the ways of the sea. Though they had no compass, they boldly pushed away from land into the unknown open ocean. Other sailors feared to go far because they thought that there were terrible monsters in the sea, but the Vikings had no such fears. They sometimes found new lands—islands on which nobody lived. There they left men to make homes and build colonies, while the rest of the sailors returned to Norway to get cows and sheep and supplies of food for the others.

Passing from island to island in this way, the Vikings came at last to Iceland and then to Greenland. On a voyage to Greenland a Viking captain named Biarni

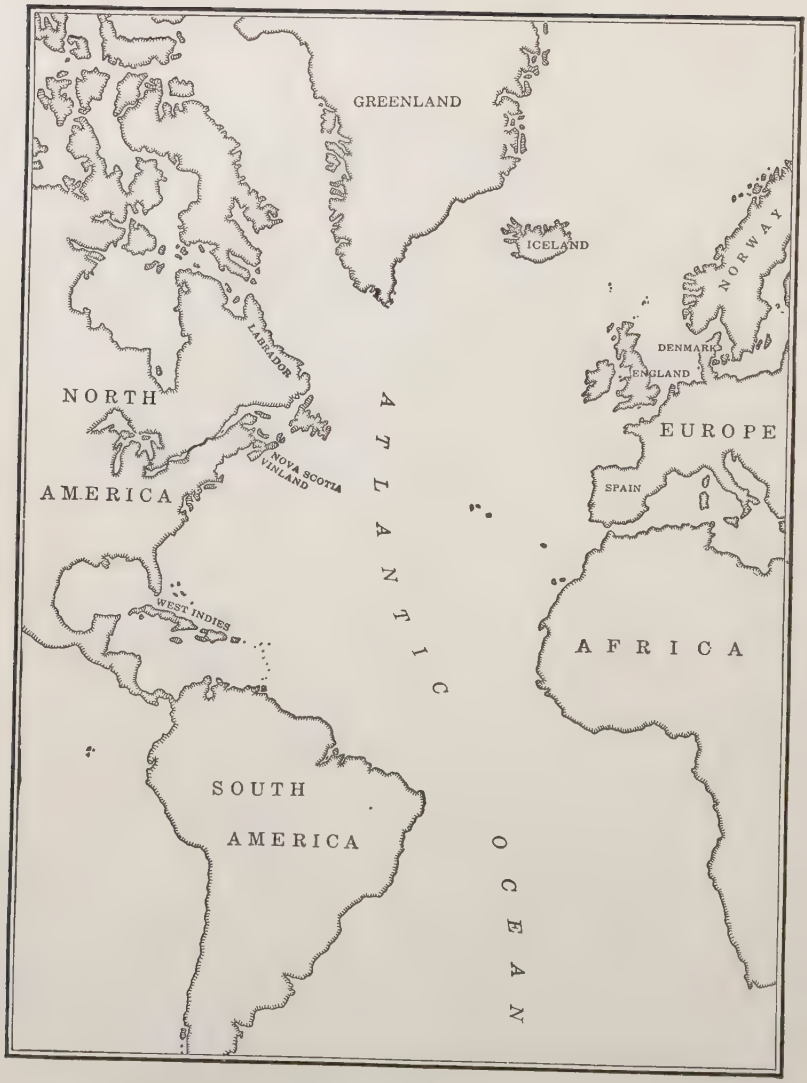
ran into a storm at sea, and the wind and waves swept him far away to the south and west. For weeks he was tossed about on the ocean. When at last he got back to Greenland, he told of seeing a new land to the west.

One of the Vikings who listened to Biarni's story was a young man called Leif the Lucky. Leif and the other young men asked Biarni what kind of land it was. "Were there any people there? Was it level and covered with trees, or were there mountains?" But Biarni had to admit that he did not set foot on shore. The young men blamed him for being too lazy to explore.

Leif bought Biarni's ship and said that he would go himself and explore the new land. So a crew, commanded by Leif, sailed forth toward the unknown West.

After sailing many days, Leif came to a land where high mountains rose, covered with snow. Some people think this must have been the coast of Labrador. Then Leif's ship passed a level shore covered with trees. This may have been Nova Scotia.

At last the Vikings found a pleasant landing place, where there were large forests and grassy meadows and where the rivers were full of fish. Here Leif and his rough sailors carried their beds ashore and set up their tents on firm ground. Leif divided his men into two parties, for he meant to explore the country. One



MANY BOLD CAPTAINS CROSSED THE ATLANTIC.

party protected the camp and ship while the other party explored the wilderness.

It was in the fall, and they found many vines bearing wild grapes. With these they were so delighted that they named the country Vinland, or the land of vines. Vinland is believed to have been some part of our coast that lies between Rhode Island and Nova Scotia. If that is so, these men were the first to discover our own America. Leif and his men stayed all winter. In the spring they loaded their ship with dried grapes and wood cut by their axes and sailed back to Greenland.

Other Vikings came to these same shores, but they got into trouble with the Indians and gave up the idea of making a home in Vinland. After a time the new land was almost forgotten. But stories about it were told from father to son. Many years later someone who could write put these stories, or *sagas*, on paper. Of course the sagas are not all true, but many wise men believe they are partly true and that it was Leif the Lucky rather than Columbus who was the first white man to discover America.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did the Viking ships differ from the ships of to-day?

2. Find Denmark, Norway, Iceland, and Greenland on the map (p. 68).

3. Tell how you think the Vikings got into trouble with the Indians.

4. Why did the Vikings take back timber to Greenland?

5. What are sagas?

6. Write two questions about this chapter, beginning each question with *How* or *Why*. Then have your classmates answer them.

7. Add new words to your list from this chapter, and have a spelling match.

Books You Will Like

Calhoun, D. D.—*The Book of Brave Adventures*, pp. 34–45.

Johnston, C. H. L.—*Famous Discoverers and Explorers of America*, pp. 3–13.

PETER THE HERMIT AND THE CRUSADES

Many years after the death of Christ, the Christian people of Europe used to go to the Holy Land to visit His tomb and to see other sacred places near Jerusalem. Those who went on such a journey were called *pilgrims*. Every year thousands of pilgrims went on a tour, or pilgrimage, to the Holy Land. Among them were kings and nobles as well as poorer people. Usually they were kindly received in Palestine.

But about the year 1070 the Turks took the city of Jerusalem. They were a rough, cruel, warlike people. They robbed the Christian pilgrims in the sacred city and tormented them in every way they could. The pilgrims came back to Europe and told with groans of their wrongs.

During these years a monk named Peter the Hermit made the journey to visit the tomb of Christ. He bowed his head in sorrow to see all the sacred places in the hands of the cruel Turks. Peter returned to Europe and traveled about through Italy and France, speaking in tears to the people about the wrongs of the Christians. He went from city to city, barefoot, clad in a coarse woolen shirt and riding a mule. The people followed him in crowds. They looked upon him as a

saint and were happy if they could only touch his garment or pluck a hair from his mule. The Pope urged the people to begin a holy war and rescue the city of Christ from the savage Turks. The multitude shouted, "God wills it! God wills it!" Soon this became their war cry.

It was not long until great crowds of people had fastened red crosses to their shoulders, as a sign of their religion, and set out for Jerusalem. The Latin word for *cross* is *crux*, and from it we get the word *Crusade*.

Many people sold all they owned and made ready to go on the Crusade. Others who did not march gave money. Most of the Crusaders went on foot, but some of them went in wagons and others on horseback. They were armed with lances, swords, javelins, or iron clubs. This was before the days of gunpowder. It was not an army, for they were not trained to fight. They did not even stop to ask where their food was to come from. They said, "Surely God will not let his pilgrims perish from hunger."

As they had to obtain food in the countries through which they passed, the army was divided and sent over different roads. They were well fed as long as they were on French or German soil, but people in other countries refused to feed them. They therefore marched over the land, carried off food, and often burned homes. Then the people of those countries took up arms and punished the Crusaders, killing many

of them. Thousands died from poor food or disease or by the sword before they reached the Holy Land. A whole army of Crusaders was slain by the Turks in one battle. Peter the Hermit, though a good man, was a poor general, and his army was little more than a mob.

But other Crusaders, with better generals, came at last in sight of the Holy City, and then all their sorrows were forgotten. "Jerusalem! Jerusalem! It is the will of God," they cried as they kissed one another and fell upon their knees to give thanks. They took off their shoes to show their love of the holy ground where Jesus had once walked.

The best of these leaders was Godfrey, a famous warrior, or knight. He brought an army of well-armed knights on horseback. They were the finest soldiers in Europe. Godfrey was brave and powerful, and many a knight had fallen before his battle-ax.

The Turks had taken most of the food from the country around Jerusalem and shut themselves up in that city. The Christian knights had to take the Holy City or perish from famine. They first tried to climb the high walls around the city, but the Turks threw down upon them large stones, oil, and burning tar.

The Crusaders did not have ladders for climbing the walls, but Godfrey built some ladders and machines of war. He tore down houses and churches for lumber to make high towers that could be moved up to the walls.

THE CRUSADERS CAME AT LAST IN SIGHT OF THE HOLY CITY.

The towers were three stories high, higher than the walls, so that the warriors on top of them could drive the Turks from the walls. Near the top of each tower was a kind of drawbridge, which could be let down upon the walls so that the knights could pass over it for hand-to-hand fighting.

When all was ready, the Christians had a day of prayer and then went bravely to battle. Their hurling machines threw great stones at the Turks. Heavy beams called battering rams shook the walls. The towers were pushed up to the ramparts, and Godfrey and his knights leaped upon the wall, fighting like giants. They drove back the Turks and opened the city gates. In rushed the Crusaders, crying, "It is the will of God," and took the city. They slew thousands of the Turks.

For some years the Christians held Jerusalem; then the Turks captured it again. Other armies of Crusaders came from Europe. There was even a Children's Crusade. But the Crusaders could not win Jerusalem and the Holy Land, and for a very long time after the Crusades were over, the Turks still held these places. Indeed, it was only a few years ago, during the World War, that they were taken from the Turks.

Several things rewarded the Crusaders, however. They carried home many new ideas that they had gained in their travels in the East. Men learned to shave and to bathe often. They brought back the seeds of lemons,

apricots, watermelons, rice, and sugar cane. These seeds were now planted in European countries, and the crops from them made life there much pleasanter. The travelers learned more about shipbuilding. They also learned to use a compass to guide them upon the sea in cloudy weather, and they learned how to build windmills to help do their work. About this time, too, gunpowder was invented, but who invented it we are not sure. Many think that it came from the East, but others believe that Roger Bacon, an Englishman, invented it. On the whole, the Crusades, with all this traveling about, helped to educate the people of Europe.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why did the people of Europe start a Crusade?
2. How did Peter the Hermit arouse the people?
3. What is the difference between an army and a mob?
4. What good came to the people of Europe from the Crusades?
5. What is a compass?
6. Find out what country now governs the Holy Land.

Books You Will Like

Calhoun, D. D.—*Book of Brave Adventures*, pp. 22–31.

Wells, H. G., and Carter, E. H.—*A Short History of Mankind*, pp. 121–124.

HOW THE ENGLISH MANAGED A BAD KING

A worse king than John never sat upon the throne of England. He stole, told lies, and put innocent people in prison. He was always doing wrong, and he was never sorry that he did. King John had an idea that the world was made for him and that the people of England were put there so that he might have servants to work for him.

John ordered people who were rich to give him whatever money he wanted; and if they refused, he threw them into prison. If they still refused to give, he had their hands squeezed in an iron press until the bones cracked and the blood ran, or he even put them to death. It is said that John once seized a rich Jew and caused a sound tooth to be pulled out of his jaw every morning until he consented to give the King money. The Jew endured the pain for several mornings but finally gave up his money.

If two men disagreed and brought their case before John for justice, he would decide in favor of the one who bribed him with the larger gift of money. Once when a poor man had committed a small offense, John took from him his horse and cart, with which he

earned his living, and sold them to help fill his own pockets.

In fact, John's conduct was so bad that at last his people turned against him. They would no longer bear the heavy taxes he laid on them nor endure his cruelties. All classes, high and low, hated the King.

In 1215 the nobles formed a league to force King John to do right and obey the old laws and customs. At their head was Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, an important churchman of England. Langton was a wise and good man, who took the part of the nobles against John.

The barons, or nobles, of England held a meeting with Stephen Langton. Langton asked them if it would not be a wise plan to write down on paper the rights of the people and make John sign it and promise to obey it. This paper was drawn up and called the Great Charter.

It was sent to John, who read it over. He was as angry as a spoiled child. "I will not sign it," he cried. "Why do they not ask me for my kingdom at once? The King's will should be law."

But the people would not agree to that. When John refused to sign the Great Charter, the barons took up arms and marched against him. John was frightened and promised to do as they asked.

Then on June 15, 1215, there was a meeting at Runnymede between John and Stephen Langton. At

KING JOHN SAID HE WAS READY TO SIGN THE GREAT CHARTER.

Langton's back was a great army of barons, who came to the place in shining armor, ready for battle if the King should use treachery against them. But John appeared smooth and smiling. He said that he was ready to sign the Great Charter. John was unable to write his name; instead he used a seal ring, for in those days seal rings were often used by rich people who could not sign their names. This seal John pressed into a drop of hot wax on the paper. But when he was back in his castle, he burst forth in great fury. He flung himself on the floor, tearing his clothes and biting sticks and straw in his madness.

The very first time he had a good chance, John broke his promise to obey the Great Charter. In a few months he hired an army of foreign soldiers and marched them through his own country. They killed men, women, and children, burned farmhouses, and tortured rich men to make them give up their riches to the King. It is said that for a while John himself set fire every morning to the house where he had slept the night before.

But the next year King John died, and the people rejoiced that the wicked tyrant was no more. The Great Charter was safe; and after this, when the English were abused by a king, they pointed to the Great Charter and demanded their rights. Ever since then they have made every king promise to obey the Charter.

Let us remember that the Great Charter was a step

toward liberty for all who speak the English language. It says that an accused man can be judged and punished not by the king but only by a jury of twelve men. The Charter says that the king's officers cannot throw a free man into jail and let him lie there week after week. Every man has a right to a speedy trial, it says, to decide whether he is innocent. And so the Charter goes on with sixty-three fair laws that protect men from wicked or selfish rulers.

We have these same rules of freedom in America. We like to remember the great and good man Stephen Langton and his fight in behalf of all the people. Since 1215 every king of England is reminded that the people should be treated justly and that they are not servants of the king.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did King John get money to spend?
2. How did Langton make John give the people justice?
3. Did the Great Charter make John a good ruler?
4. How was King John different from King Alfred?
5. What are some of the rights given the people by the Great Charter?
6. How can you remember the date 1215?
7. Let one pupil pretend that he is John and another that he is Langton. Let them carry on a conversation such as might have taken place at Runnymede.

THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR

In the years far gone there were kings of England who claimed that the crown of France also belonged to them. A long war arose between England and France over this question. The war lasted more than a hundred years. Those who began it were all dead and their children, too, before this long war ended.

In those days the English soldiers were beginning to fight on foot with long bows and arrows. It was said that their arrows sometimes flew so thick and fast that it seemed to snow. Most of the French soldiers were knights, mounted on horses and clad in steel armor from head to foot. The English archers, standing close with their strong bows, often sent their arrows right through the steel armor of the French knights.

In one of these battles, at Crécy (krĕs'ĭ) in France, King Edward III of England was aided by his eldest son, a boy of sixteen, who, because he wore black armor, was called the Black Prince. The French knights in armor rode fiercely against the Black Prince and his soldiers. Both sides fought bravely. One of the soldiers of the Black Prince galloped to Edward, who was in another part of the battlefield, and begged him to

send aid to his son. "Is my son killed?" asked the King.

"No," replied the messenger, "but he is in sore straits."

"Is he wounded?"

"No, sire."

"Then go back," said the King, "and tell those who sent you that he shall have no help from me. Let the boy win his spurs."

This reply put fresh courage into the soldiers of the Black Prince, and they charged the French with such fury that nothing could stand before them.

When King Edward met his son after the victory, he took the Black Prince in his arms before the whole army and said, "Fair son, right royally have you behaved to-day and proved yourself worthy of a crown." But the young Prince bowed to the ground and gave the honor of victory to the King, his father.

It was in this battle that soldiers on foot, armed with long bows, first defeated knights clad in steel armor and mounted on horses. The English bowmen were farmers without much training, but they had easily conquered the French nobles and their knights in armor. It was in this battle, too, that European soldiers first heard the sound of gunpowder in war. The English had a clumsy wooden cannon. It was bound around with iron hoops, and the small shot did not do much harm to the enemy. But this was only the beginning of the

use of gunpowder. It soon did away with mounted knights in armor, for any soldier on foot with a musket was more than a match for a knight, whose armor could easily be pierced by a bullet.

King Edward and his famous son, the Black Prince, both died before the end of the long war.

JOAN OF ARC HELPED DRIVE THE ENGLISH OUT OF FRANCE.

Some time later the English army got hold of northern France, but they could go no farther south without capturing the city of Orleans. They laid siege to it and weakened its walls. Everyone thought that the city would soon fall into the hands of the English.

The French soldiers were splendid warriors, but they needed a good leader. Prince Charles of France, for whom the French were fighting, was good for nothing except to wear a crown. At last word came to him

that a young peasant girl named Joan of Arc wished to see him. She refused to be turned away. Joan said that she had seen a vision of angels and had heard voices telling her to drive the English army away from Orleans and to crown Charles king at Rheims (rēmz).

It is said that Joan was brought before Charles, who had disguised himself, to see if she would know him. She looked among the courtiers, or nobles, a moment and then knelt before Charles.

"I am not the King," he said falsely.

"Noble Prince, you and no one else are the King," Joan replied; and she told him of the voices she had heard. She said, "I am willing to lead the French to victory."

Now there had been an old saying that some day France would be saved by a maiden, so Charles and his nobles listened to her words. It seemed foolish for a poor, weak girl to try to lead an army of rough, hard warriors. But they put on her some light, polished armor and set her upon a great white horse, with a sword in her hand. On her pure white banner were two pictures, one of two angels bearing the lilies of France and the other of God upholding the world. So beautiful and glorious was this Maid of Orleans that the French people thought her an angel and went wild with joy. They bowed low before her, and those who could get near enough to touch her, her armor, or her horse thought themselves very fortunate.

JOAN OF ARC WORE LIGHT, POLISHED ARMOR AND RODE A GREAT WHITE HORSE.

Joan had seen nothing of war, for she was only seventeen, but she bravely led the French army as it fought its way into Orleans. Those within the walls believed that she was sent from heaven to save them from the English, and they eagerly followed her to battle.

When the English heard of this wondrous maid, some of them thought that she was a witch; others thought that she was sent by God. They were almost afraid to fight against her troops. In one battle after another the English were driven northward. Finally Joan persuaded Prince Charles to go with her to Rheims to be crowned. To Rheims they went, fighting and winning battles along the way. There Charles was crowned king, while Joan stood near by with her white banner in her hand.

Now that Joan of Arc had done the work that she believed the voices had told her to do, she begged permission to go back to her home. But King Charles thought that she was still needed to help drive out the English, for he knew that his soldiers would follow gladly wherever she led. They were almost ready to worship her. "Do not kiss my clothes or my armor," she said to them, "I am only a poor maid whom God has used for His purpose." But Joan did as the King wished and stayed to lead the French to victory.

At last Joan was captured by the English, who sang and rejoiced as if they had won the war. She was put in prison and made to wear heavy chains. The

ungrateful King of France did not try to aid her. Finally she was accused of being a witch, and the English made plans to burn her. They tied her to a stake and piled bundles of wood around her, to which they set fire. On the spot where she was so cruelly put to death there stands to-day a noble statue of this brave Maid of Orleans.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Find England and France on the map (p. 84).
2. Make a bow and arrow, and cut a suit of armor out of black paper.
3. Dramatize the meeting of the messenger and King Edward.
4. What were the first cannon like?
5. Let the class make a collection of pictures of Joan of Arc.
6. Why was the French army willing to follow a girl?

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 112–120.
Paine, Albert Bigelow—*The Girl in White Armor.*
Steedman, Amy—*When They Were Children*, pp. 27–36.
Tappan, E. M.—*European Hero Stories*, pp. 194–203.

FAMOUS TRAVELERS

Hundreds of years ago there came to Venice, in Italy, three travelers. They were clothed in ragged garments. "We used to live in Venice," they said. "We are the Polo travelers." But their old friends shook their heads and said, "We do not know you."

"Don't you remember Maffio Polo and Nicolo Polo and his son Marco, who used to live here in Venice? We have been for twenty years in far Cathay," they said, "where we were friends and trusted officials of Kublai Khan (kōō′blī kän), the great ruler of China. He has paid us with much gold."

But their friends only laughed at their story and pointed to their ragged clothes. "You are probably beggars and not rich officers of a king," they replied.

Of course the Polos had grown old in the long years in the East. The brothers were bent and gray, and Marco, who had left Venice at the age of seventeen, was now a man. It was dangerous for rich men to travel along the roads in those days. Robbers were everywhere, and the Polos had dressed poorly to deceive robbers. They were telling the truth, for they were indeed great travelers and they were now very rich men.

The Polos wondered what they could do to prove their story. At last they decided to have a party and to invite all their old friends in Venice to it. Their friends, with much doubting, came to the party of the beggar travelers. The Polos appeared dressed in fine clothes and gave their guests a splendid feast. Then they brought forth their old ragged coats and pulled the seams apart. Out fell many rich jewels—pearls, diamonds, and rubies. The guests looked on with wide, wondering eyes.

"These jewels are the riches we have brought from the East," the travelers explained. "As gold was too heavy to carry with us, we bought costly gems, which are much lighter."

The story of the rich Polos spread quickly over Venice. People flocked to see and hear the great travelers.

After a while a war arose between the cities of Venice and Genoa, and Marco Polo was captured by the soldiers from Genoa and put in prison. While he was in prison, he wrote a book called *The Book of Marco Polo*. It was the first great book of travel, and it was written by hand, for this was before men had learned how to print.

In this book Marco Polo tells many stories of how people lived in the lands of the sunrise. The people he visited were the Tartars, or Mongols, of China. Here are some of the things Polo wrote:

THE POLOS BROUGHT FORTH THEIR OLD RAGGED COATS AND PULLED THE SEAMS APART.

"Every man of the Tartars has a figure of his god set up in his house. When he eats, he takes the fat of the meat and rubs grease on the mouth of his god. He also does that to his wife and children. Then they take some of their broth and sprinkle it before the door of their house. This is their way of asking a blessing."

"The rich Tartars," said Marco Polo, "wear clothes for the most part of gold and silk, lined with costly furs. If a Tartar steals, he gets seven blows with a stick, or seventeen or twenty-seven, according to the value of what he has taken. If he steals things of great value, he may suffer a hundred seven. If he steals a horse, he is killed with a sword."

Marco Polo's book made men wish to travel in far-off countries to see with their own eyes these strange sights. The more men traveled, the more they knew about the earth. Perhaps Christopher Columbus read Polo's book.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Write a conversation that you think might have taken place between Marco Polo and some friend of his boyhood who did not recognize him.

2. Draw a picture of the three Polo beggars.

3. What were some of the articles brought from the Far East in those days?

4. Dramatize a conversation that might have occurred among the guests as they went home after the Polos' party.

5. Trace the journey of the Polos on a globe or map.

6. Would you have liked to take a trip like the Polos'? Why?

Books You Will Like

Nida, W. L.—*Following Columbus*, pp. 18–23.

Tappan, E. M.—*European Hero Stories*, pp. 152–157.

Wells, H. G., and Carter, E. H.—*A Short History of Mankind*, pp. 132–133.

THE STORY OF PRINTING

How could the people of the world get along without paper? Think of the many things you could not have if there were no paper.

It was in Egypt, you remember, that a kind of paper called papyrus was first made. It was made from the inner bark of a reed that grew along the banks of the Nile River. For many, many years the people of Europe sent to Egypt for their paper, but at last it was hard to get. Then the writers of Europe learned to use sheepskins to write on. A skin that had been made ready for writing was called *parchment.* There was then no such thing as printing. A book was a roll of parchment, with writing on it, which you unrolled as you read.

Parchment was made from the skins of lambs or goats as well as sheep. It was not easily made. The skins had to be soaked in lime, then scraped with a knife, and rubbed smooth with stones. It was then dyed with one color or another. You can see that parchment books, or rolls, would be very costly, because there were not enough sheep and goats to furnish all the skins needed.

About a thousand years ago a new kind of paper was brought into Europe from somewhere, perhaps from

China. It was made from cotton and was coarse and likely to blot when one wrote on it with ink. Later the people of Europe learned to make far better paper from rags. Rag paper is sometimes used for books and letters. To-day our newspapers are made from wood pulp. Cheap paper has been a great aid to man, for it has helped make books cheap and learning easy.

It was in China, we are told, that men first learned to print, but the people of Europe also learned it for themselves. The Chinese first printed pictures with a woodcut, which is a block of wood with a picture carved in it. The picture was drawn on a smooth board or block, and then the wood was cut away, leaving all the lines of the picture raised. By inking it and pressing this woodcut on paper a picture was printed, and many pictures could be made from one cut. This was a much quicker and cheaper way than drawing each picture separately.

After a time the idea of printing pictures from woodcuts was carried to the people of Europe. Then someone got the idea of carving a whole page of words in one block of wood. Thus you could ink it and print a whole page at a time from one of these blocks. But it was a long, hard task to carve away the wood for a page block, and it could be used only for this one page.

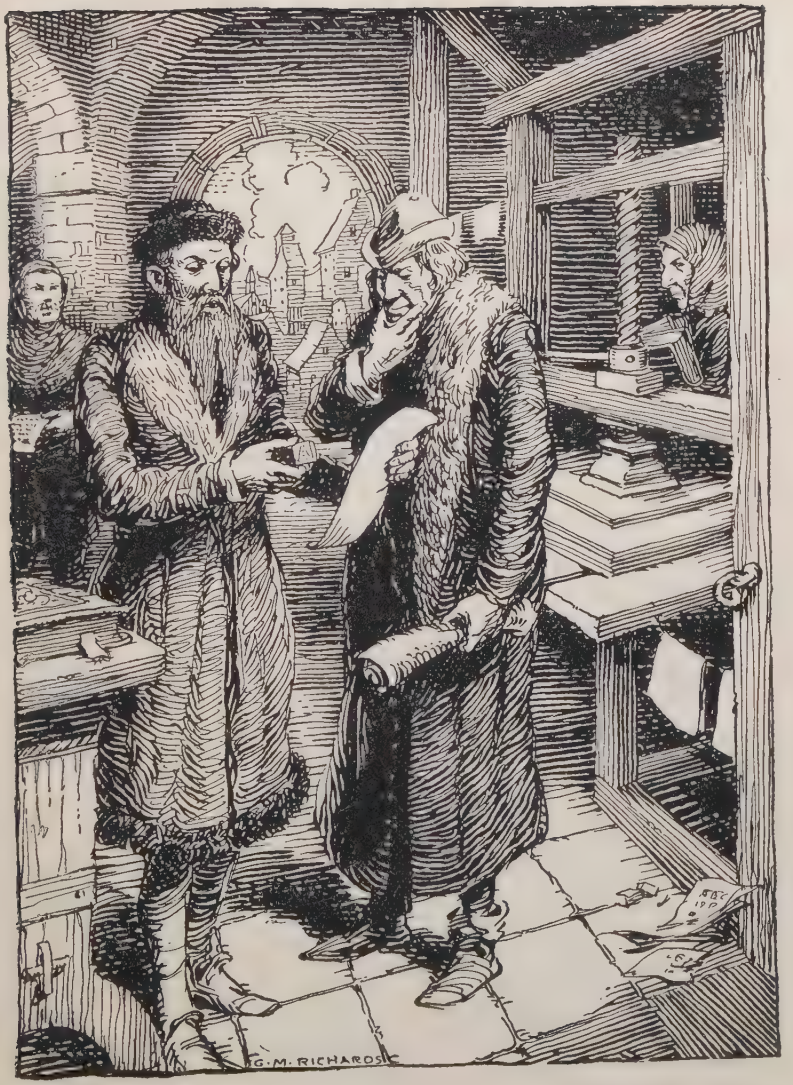
At last a clever man began to carve each letter in a separate block. The blocks looked a little like those that boys and girls now have in their toy printing sets.

These letters could be used over and over to make different words. Who first invented these movable type letters we do not know. It may have been a man named Coster, who lived in Holland. But most men who have looked into the question think that it was John Gutenberg (gōō′tĕn-bĕrĸ), a German.

John Gutenberg learned to read the old parchment rolls, and he often said that it was a pity only rich people could own books. He worked many years trying to improve printing by woodcuts. He did a great deal of his work in secret, and his neighbors wondered what he was doing. He got the idea somehow of cutting each letter on a separate piece of wood. Then he learned to bind the pieces together to make words for printing. This was much better than carving a whole page of words on one block.

But Gutenberg found that his wooden letters soon wore out, and after working a long time he learned how to make his type letters of metal. How he rejoiced when he had done this! Then he made a printing press to hold his type as he printed.

At last Gutenberg had printed the whole Bible in Latin, six hundred pages, and the letters were sharp and clear. The invention was a great success. All down the years boys and girls will call John Gutenberg a great man, for he was one of the men who showed how books could be made so cheaply that everyone might read and get an education.



AT LAST GUTENBERG HAD PRINTED THE BIBLE, AND THE LETTERS WERE SHARP AND CLEAR.

It was not long till movable type and printing presses appeared in all the big cities of Europe. An Englishman named William Caxton went to live in Belgium. While he was there, he learned how to make metal type and to print. When he returned to England, he began printing books in English. The first book printed in English was made by Caxton. This book told the story of Troy and the war which the Greeks had fought there long ago. At the end of the story Caxton added these words of his own:

"Thus ends my book. I have translated it the best I could. My eyes are dimmed by looking too much on white paper. I have learned by great labor to put this book in print in the manner you see here. It is not written with pen and ink, as other books have been. All the copies were printed together."

From that time on books became cheaper, and thousands could buy them, where only a few could before. More and more people learned to read, and this helped them to think for themselves. One of the greatest inventions in all the world is printing. It is too bad that we do not know who first invented it. At any rate, it is well for us to give credit to Coster, Gutenberg, and Caxton.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How was parchment made?
2. How were books first made? Why were they costly?

3. What is a woodcut?
4. How did Gutenberg invent printing?
5. How is paper made?
6. Why is printing a great invention?
7. Which do you think has helped man most, the compass, gunpowder, or printing? Give reasons for your answer.

A Book You Will Like

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Makers of Progress*, pp. 1–10.

COLUMBUS FINDS THE NEW WORLD

For a long, long time a sea captain named Columbus had tried to get ships and men to sail westward to find the Spice Islands. At last he was ready. He had three tiny ships and about one hundred men. It was hard to get many sailors. People were afraid to go on a voyage west over the unknown Atlantic. Other sea captains had kept pretty close to shore so that they could easily find their way home. But Columbus planned to sail directly from Europe toward the Indies; for, he said, "I am sure the world is round."

But nobody had proved that the earth was round, and the ignorant sailors had all sorts of fears. Sea captains had sailed south into the hot belt of the world, where the water is warm, and some sailors said that the ocean beyond was boiling hot. Most people still believed that the world was flat and that, if you sailed too far from land, you might drop off the edge. Other good story-tellers said that far away there were great flying dragons that could carry off a whole ship — men and all — in their talons.

You can see from this why the ignorant sailors were afraid to go with Columbus. Men were let out of jail if they would agree to go. Some of the sailors who had

agreed to go had to be dragged on board. When the ships at last sailed away, the wives and sisters of the men wept because they feared that they would never see them again. The sailors, too, were very sad. When the last bit of land was out of sight, some of them began to weep. Only Columbus and a few bolder ones had good courage.

The weather was good, and the sea was smooth. As far as the sailors could see, north, south, east, or west, there was only water. Morning, noon, and night this same blue, level sea — not a ship or a hill or an island was in sight, only the ocean. Then night came, and the sea was black and angry looking. So it was every night, and the timid sailors often lay awake and thought of home. Days went by, and weeks. Still they sailed and sailed toward the unknown west, and knew not where they were. No man had ever been there before. No wonder some of the sailors wished that they could turn around and sail home.

Once a land bird, a heron, flew by the ship, and the sailors hoped that it was a sign that land was near, but none appeared. A falling star swept down into the ocean. This frightened the poor sailors at first, but Columbus quieted their fears. The wind was from the east. It filled the sails and carried them gently on their journey. They wondered if the wind always blew toward the west and if they could ever get home against it.

"LET US TURN AND GO HOME BEFORE WE ARE LOST," SAID THE SAILORS.

Then they came upon large patches of weeds drifting from the west. Perhaps these grew upon land near by, for some of the weeds were still green. They saw a white bird of a kind which does not sleep usually upon the sea. The sailors were now eager. They looked with keen eyes toward the west, each hoping to be the first to see land, for Columbus had promised a prize to the one who first noticed land. But night came, and no land. In the morning the disappointed men saw only the trackless sea. Two birds such as seldom go far from shore alighted on the ship. Columbus put overboard a long line to sound the depth of the ocean here, but he could not reach bottom.

At last the wind changed. This cheered the sailors, for they saw that it would not always be against them. A big whale appeared on the sea not far off, and Columbus said that this was a sign of land. But still they saw not even an island. Then the wind stopped. The ship could not go on without wind, and again the sailors were disappointed. Columbus tried to cheer them; but the more he said, the more determined the sailors were to return. "Let us turn and go home before we are lost," they said.

"No," said Columbus, "sail on!"

"What if our food should give out or spoil?" they asked.

But Columbus only replied to his men: "Sail on! Sail on!"

"Our ships are already too weak to carry us home," urged the sailors.

They secretly plotted to throw Columbus into the sea. Then they could turn about and sail for home before it was too late. They would say, when they got back to Spain, that Columbus fell overboard by accident at night when he was gazing at the stars. The sailors whispered together in the corners of the ship. They said, "He is a madman, for we have gone far enough to prove that there is no land to discover."

One day the sailors on one of the ships set up a shout. "Land! land!" they said and pointed toward the west. Columbus fell on his knees and gave thanks to God. The sailors climbed up the masts to see better. But it was only a cloud near the horizon. How discouraged they were!

For several days more they sailed on. Flying fish leaped from the sea and fell on board. There were now many signs of land, and all were again eagerly on the lookout. When three days more had passed and there was no land, the sailors were very ugly indeed and demanded that they be allowed to turn homeward. But Columbus was firm. They plotted again to take his life.

Fortunately, other and better signs of land appeared. A bush with berries on it floated by. They picked up a small board and a stick that was strangely carved.

They saw a green fish that lives only on rocky coasts. Flocks of small birds were flying by. That night no sailor slept. All eyes looked toward the horizon.

Columbus saw a small light, like a torch, swinging up and down. Soon a gun was fired from one of the ships as a sign that land was seen a few miles away. The sailors took down their sails, and in the morning there was a beautiful land in sight, with trees and strange people on the shore. Columbus had found a new world.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do you think Columbus said to the sailors to get them to go with him?

2. Suppose that you met an ignorant boy to-day who said that the world is flat. How would you prove to him that he was wrong?

3. Dramatize the story of the sailors who plotted against Columbus.

4. Draw a picture of a ship on the ocean, showing how lonely it is.

5. What reasons could you give for believing that Columbus was a great man?

6. Dramatize the meeting between Columbus and the Indians. Could they talk to each other?

7. Review the words in your word list, and have a spelling match.

Books You Will Like

Alshouse, H. S.—*Heroes of the Nations*, pp. 130–142.

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 5–24.

Holland, R. S.—*Historic Boyhoods*, pp. 9–20.

Lucia, Rose—*American Discoverers*, pp. 1–33.

Olcott, F. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 2–27.

Stapley, Mildred—*Christopher Columbus*.

HERNANDO DE SOTO HUNTS FOR GOLD

Among the first Spanish explorers who came to America was Hernando De Soto. In South America he had seen the Indian temples with their plates of gold and other riches, and he had taken back to Spain a great deal of money. But his fortune was soon spent, so he called for a company of men to go with him to hunt for gold in North America.

Over five hundred men with many fine horses came, ready to search for a fortune. They brought blood-hounds to hunt the Indians and chains with which to tie them.

The Spaniards landed on the west coast of Florida and rode north on their horses. Behind them was driven a herd of hogs to provide food. The Spaniards found many swamps in their path and spent many weeks traveling over the sands of Florida. The Indians had been ill treated by other white men, so that when they saw De Soto's band, they were afraid and left their villages to hide in the woods.

One day De Soto's party were about to take the life of a prisoner, when the man spoke to them in Spanish. They found that he was a white man named Ortiz. He had been lost from another party of Span-

iards and had been living with the Indians. De Soto made him their guide. Ortiz said that there was a chief to the north who knew where gold could be found, and so away they marched.

DE SOTO EXPLORED FOR GOLD BUT FOUND, INSTEAD, A GREAT RIVER.

One day they came to an Indian village which was ruled by a beautiful princess. She came to meet the white men, carried on a kind of couch, or litter, by four of her servants. When she alighted before De Soto,

she took a string of pearls from her neck, put it about his neck, and invited him to enter her village.

De Soto accepted her invitation, but he let his men rob her village of anything they wanted. When they left, they made the princess go with them to protect them from other Indian tribes. The Spaniards treated her kindly, but she did not like to be a prisoner. She knew the wilderness much better than they, and one day she leaped from her litter and ran swiftly into the forest, taking all De Soto's pearls with her.

Later a chief welcomed them to his village, but they were no sooner inside than he gave a signal, and a cloud of arrows fell upon the Spaniards. Many of De Soto's men died. De Soto ordered the others to fight with their guns, and they soon conquered the Indians and burned their village.

One day the Spaniards were resting in some huts they had built, when Indians shot burning arrows on to the roofs. Soon everything was on fire, and De Soto's men were forced to flee. Most of their clothes and other possessions were burned. Then they wore bark and skins for clothing, instead of uniforms. Their blankets were made of braided grass. Their long hair and beards made them look like wild men. The horses were thin and lame. Their medicine was gone and most of their powder. But De Soto was ashamed to return to Spain without gold. He ordered the men to push on.

DE SOTO ORDERED HIS MEN TO BUILD BOATS.

Finally they came to a great body of water. It was so wide that they could hardly see the other shore. "It is a lake," said one.

"No, it is a river," said another. "See how fast the water moves. There is a tree floating downstream, and the water is yellow with mud."

De Soto ordered his men to build boats and cross the river, which was nearly a mile wide. Indeed, it was the largest river in our country. It is now called the Mississippi.

De Soto did not know he had reached an important river. Had he known it, he might have sailed down the river to the sea and taken news of it back to Spain. Then perhaps his long journey would have been worth while. But, instead, he wandered for another year in the wilderness beyond, still searching for gold.

At last he became discouraged and fell sick with a fever. He told his men that he was sorry they had suffered so much for him. Before he died, he chose another leader for them.

When the brave De Soto was gone, his men were afraid that the Indians would harm his body, for they had been told that De Soto came from heaven and would never die. De Soto's followers therefore buried his body in the river that he had discovered. Then they made canoes and floated down to the Gulf of Mexico. From there they made their way along the coast to the Spanish settlements in Mexico.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Do you know of any places where men have rushed in to hunt for gold?

2. Do you think De Soto made any mistakes? What would you have done differently?

3. How would you have liked to be Ortiz?

4. Suppose that De Soto could return to life and sail down the Mississippi now. What do you think would surprise him most?

Books You Will Like

Johnston, C. H. L.—*Famous Discoverers and Explorers of America*, p. 251.

Lucia, Rose—*American Discoverers*, pp. 126–138.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, THE DARING SAILOR

After Columbus had discovered America for the King and Queen of Spain, the Spaniards took the lead in exploring the New World. Wherever the Spaniards went, they set up their rule over the land. In parts of Mexico and South America they found a great amount of gold, silver, and precious stones, such as rubies, pearls, and diamonds. They forced the Indians to work the mines for them, while they took the wealth and sent it home to Spain in clumsy ships called *galleons*. So much gold came to Spain from the mines in America that Spain became very rich. And rich nations, you know, are likely to be proud.

All the world heard about the great riches to be had in America. It was not long therefore before many of the skillful and daring sailors of England were trying to find riches in the New World. Soon they began to dispute with the Spaniards about land in America. This caused a good deal of ill feeling between England and Spain. There was not open war, but every time their ships met at sea there was a battle. Usually the English won. This made the King of Spain very angry; for was not Spain the greatest country in the world?

Philip, the King of Spain, made plans to invade

England with his army. He said that he would drive Queen Elizabeth from the throne of England and put a friendly ruler in her place.

You can imagine what Queen Elizabeth thought of Philip and his plans. She hated him and his country of Spain. Yet she did not want to go to war, for Spain was very rich and had many ships and soldiers. You can imagine, too, how the English sailors and sea captains felt toward Spain.

There was at that time in England a number of mighty sea captains. There were Drake and Hawkins and Davis and Raleigh and many others. Of all these, no other was so famous as Francis Drake. Drake or some other "sea dog" pounced upon the clumsy ships of Spain wherever they could be found and took away their gold. This was of course unlawful and might cause war, but Queen Elizabeth only smiled at it. Every ship taken meant that Spain was one ship poorer and weaker.

One day in 1577 Drake sailed from England with five ships. You know what Drake had in mind — those gold-laden ships of the hated Spaniards. He sailed for America and went along the east coast of South America to the southern end. He was aiming for Peru on the west coast, where most of the gold was found. Going around Cape Horn, he ran into a terrible storm, which scattered his ships until they were hundreds of miles apart. Three of the ships went down,

ON THIS MAP YOU CAN TRACE DRAKE'S ROUTE IN THE NEW WORLD.

and all the sailors were lost. Another sailed back to England. Drake was left with only one ship, called the *Golden Hind.*

No English ship had ever been on the Pacific Ocean before, and Drake knew that he could surprise the Spanish ships there and win easy victories. When he reached Valparaiso (văl′pȧ-rī′sō), he saw a great Spanish galleon. The Spaniards thought that the *Golden Hind* must be a Spanish vessel. They therefore ran up their flag and beat their drums in welcome. Drake sailed swiftly up to the Spanish galleon and began to fire. The Spanish sailors tumbled overboard into the sea and swam ashore, and Drake took the cargo, several hundred pounds of gold.

On he sailed, northward along the west coast of South America. He reached a port to which the Spaniards brought silver from the mines in the Andes Mountains. He sailed in and saw shining silver piled in bars on the shore. The men in charge of the mule train which had carried it down were fast asleep beside their treasure. The English rowed quietly to shore and carried the silver to the *Golden Hind* while the mule drivers slept. Then, behold, a second train of mules came to the harbor with a rich load. The English sailors went back for it, and before long all the silver was on board the *Golden Hind.*

At Arica (ä-rē′kä) Drake and his men came upon three small Spanish ships. They quickly captured

these ships and took fifty-seven bricks of silver, each weighing about twenty pounds.

To-day we should call all this robbery. But Drake knew that secretly Queen Elizabeth would be pleased.

The *Golden Hind* was now coming to the port of Lima, the greatest city on that coast. To this harbor was carried the vast wealth of gold and silver from the mines of Peru. There were seventeen Spanish ships in the harbor, but Drake sailed boldly in. He thought that he would take them by surprise. He did, for most of the Spanish sailors were on shore. But he was a little too late. A great treasure ship had carried away the riches a few days before. It had started for Panama, with all the riches of the mines for that year — silver, gold, and precious stones.

Away went Drake after the big treasure ship. He promised a chain of gold to the first man to sight the Spanish galleon. Day after day they sped along with every sail spread. They chased the treasure ship 800 miles and at last came in sight of her one afternoon. Drake slowed down to wait for darkness. The Spaniards saw the strange ship far away; but they did not dream that it was an English vessel, for they had never before seen one on the Pacific.

As soon as night came, Drake shot swiftly up to the galleon and fired his cannon balls through her sails. His men were soon on the Spanish deck, sword in hand. In a few minutes the load of treasure was won.

AT LAST THE *Golden Hind* CAME IN SIGHT OF THE TREASURE SHIP.

No one but Drake and Queen Elizabeth ever knew just how much wealth was on the galleon, but it is said that there were twenty tons of solid silver, many hundred pounds of gold in bars and nuggets, and a great store of pearls and diamonds.

Then Drake sailed north along the west coast of what is now the United States, looking for some strait, or waterway, to the Atlantic. As he could find none, he sailed west around the world to England. When he reached his home port, all England went wild with joy. Drake had been given up for lost, for he had been gone nearly three years. Queen Elizabeth went on board the *Golden Hind* and made Drake a knight. After that he was always called Sir Francis Drake.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What caused the trouble between England and Spain?
2. Where did Spain get her gold and silver?
3. How could Drake with but one ship easily capture many Spanish ships?
4. Drake, you know, sailed around the world. Trace his entire route on a map.

Books You Will Like

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 42-51.

Dickson, M. S.—*Camp and Trail in Early American History*, pp. 50-68.

Lucia, Rose—*American Discoverers*, pp. 139-150.

Stimpson, M. S.—*Child's Book of English Biography*, pp. 22–27.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH AND QUEEN ELIZABETH

Sir Walter Raleigh (rô′lĭ) was the first Englishman to send a colony of people to settle in the country which is now the United States. Three times he sent ships here. It is said that he spent a million dollars in this way.

Walter Raleigh was a handsome man, who loved fine clothes. Three hundred years ago men, as well as women, wore velvets and satins. The men had long silk stockings and buckles at their knees and on their shoes. They wore ruffs about their necks, trimmed with lace. When Raleigh was a young man, he gained favor with the Queen, it is said, because of his red velvet cloak.

Queen Elizabeth was called the Virgin Queen because she was not married. She was tall and haughty and dressed her red hair very high. One day, we are told, she was taking a walk with her maids while many people stood by, watching her step daintily along in her proudest manner. Suddenly she came to a muddy place in the street. She stopped and looked down at her slippers.

Walter Raleigh was standing near by. His hand-

some red velvet coat embroidered in gold was thrown across his shoulders. At once he knew what to do. He ran forward quickly, snatched his coat from his shoulders, and laid it over the mud. The Queen walked safely across the street.

The Queen loved attention from handsome young men, and she at once asked who this young gallant might be. Then she sent for him to come to her court. In time she made him a knight, and he was called Sir Walter Raleigh.

Sir Walter Raleigh wore hats with beautiful feathers and bands of pearls. Bright jewels were in his shoe buckles. He had many velvet cloaks, and jewels in the sheath for his sword. He had plenty of money, but he did not have his freedom. He wanted to go to the new land across the sea, but the Queen did not wish him to leave her court.

He sent a company of people to settle a colony in America, but they did not stay. When the ships came back, they brought a new plant, called tobacco, which the Indians smoked. Sir Walter learned to smoke. One day, it is said, he was sitting in a deep chair with the smoke rising above his head. His servant, who had never before seen anyone smoke, came in just then with a pitcher of ale. He thought that his master must be afire and threw the ale over his head.

Raleigh's ship also brought potatoes to England, and Sir Walter planted them on his estate. In fact, pota-

toes, pumpkins, squashes, tomatoes, and Indian corn first came to Europe from America.

Sir Walter sent another colony to America under Captain White. The men were carpenters, farmers, and blacksmiths, who knew how to work and make all the things they needed. They brought their families with them so that they would not be lonely. They settled on the coast of Roanoke Island, built a fort, and planted crops so that they would have food for the winter. Captain White tried to make friends with the red men by giving them pieces of bright jewelry, a red handkerchief, or a knife.

Raleigh had called the land Virginia because he wished to honor the Queen. One day a baby girl was born in the colony. She was Captain White's grandchild and the first white child born in this country. They called her Virginia—Virginia Dare.

White thought that he had better sail back to England to get more supplies. He bade his daughter and the baby Virginia good-by and promised that he would return soon. When he reached England, he found that all the ships must be used for war with Spain. As fast as he got a ship ready, it was taken from him. White was very much troubled, for he knew that his colony needed him. It was four long years before he again reached Roanoke.

As he drew near he could hardly wait. His little grandchild would be four years old. Then one day

THE QUEEN MADE WALTER RALEIGH A KNIGHT.

at dusk land was seen, and White and his men quickly got into a small boat and rowed to shore. They thought they saw a light.

White said, "That must be from one of the cabins we built."

They landed and looked about. They called and blew their horns and fired their guns, but there was no answer. There were only deserted cabins; not a white man was to be seen.

Day after day White and his men searched. There was a bit of clothing here and there, but no one had lived in the cabins for many months. On one of the trees were carved eight letters, CROATOAN. White remembered that he had told his men to leave directions for him if anything happened to them. He believed this word was the name of an Indian tribe that lived on an island near by. Perhaps they had carried the white people away. Perhaps the colonists were so hungry that they had made boats and gone to live with the Indians, who knew how to get food.

White tried to reach the island, but there were strong winds on the coast, and his boat could not go against the gale. Again and again he tried, without success. His sailors begged to go back to England. Sadly he gave up the search and started home. He knew that he would never again see his little grandchild. Perhaps she grew up in an Indian home, learned to live as the Indians did, and married an Indian brave.

We shall never know what became of the first white child born in this country.

Raleigh's colony, you see, was a failure. He had now spent a fortune trying to make a settlement in America and had grown tired of serving the selfish Queen. When he married one of her maids of honor, he so offended Elizabeth that he was not allowed to appear at the royal court.

Then Raleigh went to Spain to fight. There he was wounded. When he was asked what reward he had received for his brave service, he answered: "I have a lame leg and am deformed. I once had good words and kind usage, but now I have only poverty and pain." When the Queen heard of this sad speech, she forgave him and let him come back to her court.

But after Queen Elizabeth died, King James I put Raleigh in prison. There he lived for thirteen years. Only once did the King give him freedom. He allowed Sir Walter to make a trip to the New World to try to discover gold. Poor Raleigh came back without gold and was again put in prison. While he was there, he wrote a book called *The History of the World.*

The gallant Raleigh came to a very sad end. The King had him beheaded in order that he might have his property. But Sir Walter had found out many things about the New World, and later other Englishmen were encouraged to plant a colony here, at Jamestown, Virginia.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Do you think Sir Walter's manner of dress better than that of our men to-day? Why?

2. What do you think of the way in which Sir Walter won the favor of Queen Elizabeth?

3. Dramatize the scene where Captain White returned from England to Roanoke Island.

4. What mistakes do you think Sir Walter made in trying to settle a colony in America?

5. Give a three-minute talk on Raleigh. On Queen Elizabeth.

Books You Will Like

Bird, G. E., and Starling, Maud—*Historical Plays for Children*, pp. 79–95.

Dickson, M. S.—*Camp and Trail in Early American History*, pp. 69–85.

Higginson, T. W.—*Young Folks' Book of American Explorers*, pp. 177–200.

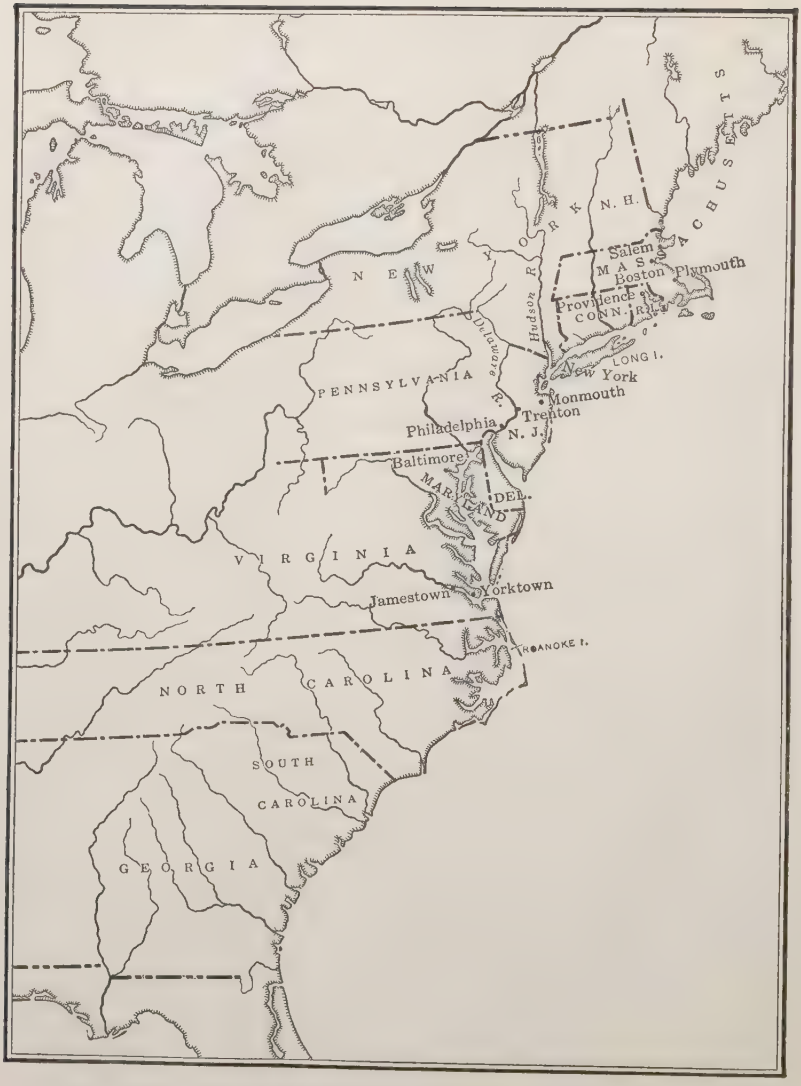
Stimpson, M. S.—*Child's Book of English Biography.*

JOHN SMITH AND THE INDIAN PRINCESS

There have been many John Smiths in the world; but when we read of John Smith in history, we think only of the man who helped save the English colony at Jamestown, Virginia.

Suppose, when you reached the eighth grade, that you decided to run away from home and fight in a strange country, and suppose that you served in its army for four years, taking orders and working hard every day. Then suppose that one day you were bold enough to run away from the army and hide in a hut in the woods. Those were some of the things that John Smith did.

Smith had adventures in almost every country of Europe. He wrote about his adventures. He said that he was once thrown overboard when traveling on a ship and that he saved himself by swimming many hours. He had, he said, fought three duels with Turkish soldiers and won all three. He had been a slave in a Turkish home until he killed his master and escaped in the master's clothes. I am telling you all this to show you how daring he was, how well trained he had been for living in a new land among savage Indians, and how fortunate it was that he decided to come to America.



THE FIRST THIRTEEN COLONIES ON THE ATLANTIC SHORE.

When the Virginia colonists sailed for the New World, there were no women on the ship, only a hundred one men and four boys. The King of England said, "I will put some names in a sealed envelope, and when you reach the new land, the men whose names are in the envelope shall be your rulers." John Smith's name was one of those in the envelope. On the way over he boasted so much and told of so many daring things he had done that the men grew afraid of him and put him in irons. However, when they arrived, they were willing to let him take the lead in facing the red men.

They made their settlement in the spring. Smith said: "Let us hurry and plant grain. Then we shall have something to eat when cold weather comes."

The other men said: "No, we want to search for gold. Look at the gold the Spaniards have found in the New World. We can raise grain at home."

Meanwhile, they found fresh oysters and killed game and made bread of the moldy meal left from the ship. The summer went by, and when winter came there was nothing to eat.

"The Indians have corn," said Smith. "I am not afraid to go and trade for some." But he found that the Indians did not want these new people to take their lands. They were glad to know that the white men were starving and refused to sell corn to Smith, though he offered them sharp knives and looking-glasses and blue beads.

The Indians had only arrows and tomahawks for weapons. "We will give you a piece of bread for your gun and your sword," they said; but this Smith would not do. When he gave them gunpowder, the Indians planted some of it to see whether it would grow like corn.

One day, when Smith and an Indian guide were out exploring, Smith was captured and taken to the chief of an Indian tribe. Smith thought that the Indians would probably torture him to death, but he had been in danger of losing his life many times before; so he kept calm and used his wits.

He felt in his pocket, so the story goes, and brought out his compass. This, you know, is a small instrument with a needle that always points to the north. It has glass over the needle. The Indians had never seen glass. As they could not touch the moving needle, they thought it was a spirit. They were afraid to kill Smith because of this spirit; so they sent him to their ruler, the great Powhatan (pou′hȧ-tăn′).

Smith wrote a note on a piece of bark and sent it to Jamestown. Then many presents arrived for the Chief from the white men. Powhatan said: "A man who can make bark talk like that is a dangerous man. Put him to death at once."

Many of these stories were written by Smith afterward, and some people, who think he was a boaster, do not believe all of them.

JOHN SMITH SHOWED THE INDIANS HIS COMPASS.

The daughter of an Indian chief could save the life of an Indian brave who was to be put to death, by asking for him as her own. In one of his stories Smith said that his life was saved in this way. His head was placed on a stone, he said, and he was about to be killed when Pocahontas (pō-kȧ-hŏn′tȧs), the daughter of Powhatan, begged that he be saved.

At any rate, the young Indian girl became a great friend of the colonists. She brought them corn and warned them when the Indians were about to make war on them. At last she came to live at Jamestown, and the white people adopted her. Pocahontas married a white man named John Rolfe and later visited England, where she was treated as a princess.

Before the first year was over, forty-six of the Jamestown colonists were dead. Smith made the rest of the men in the colony go to work and plant grain and build cabins to live in. In this way he saved them from death.

At last Smith went back to England, but more white people came to Virginia. They were able to defend themselves from the Indians. They learned to grow crops for food and to ship tobacco to England to be sold there; and after many years of suffering the colonists at Jamestown were safe.

This first lasting settlement in America was founded in 1607. Three hundred years afterward, in 1907, a monument was erected to John Smith at Jamestown.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was Smith the leader of the Virginia colony?

2. How did the Indians feel toward the colonists at Jamestown?

3. Tell the story of Pocahontas.

4. What did the white men find here for food?

5. If some of the men refused to do their share of the work, would the whole colony suffer? How do you think such idle men should be treated?

6. Do gold seekers make good settlers? Why? Do explorers make good settlers? Give a reason for your answer. What class of men make the best settlers?

7. Who usually works more steadily, a single man or a married man? Why?

Books You Will Like

Bird, G. E., and Starling, Maud—*Historical Plays for Children*, pp. 129–142.

Halleck, R. P., and Frantz, Juliette—*Our Nation's Heritage*, pp. 329–332.

Holland, R. S.—*Historic Girlhoods*, pp. 93–106.

Ingraham, S. E.—*The Story of Democracy*, pp. 148–158.

Johnson, Rossiter—*Captain John Smith*.

MILES STANDISH, THE CAPTAIN OF THE PILGRIMS

When Miles Standish was a little boy in England, he heard many tales of the new land called America. He heard of the Spaniards who had found gold and silver and precious stones in the New World. How he longed to grow up and go to this new land!

Queen Elizabeth was ruling in England, and Miles might have belonged to her royal court, which was considered a great honor; but he wanted adventure.

The Queen was sending soldiers to Holland to help the Dutch protect their shores from Spanish pirates. When Miles was eighteen, he offered to go to Holland to fight. He was only five feet tall. The Queen looked at his round, boyish face and laughed. She asked him if he wished to go as a clown or as a squire. (In those days, a squire carried a knight's shield or armor.)

"I want to go as a soldier. I want to carry a sword," said Miles, his eyes flashing.

Miles fought in Holland for three years and became Captain Standish.

Meanwhile, Queen Elizabeth had died, and King James was on the throne. At that time some of the English people started separate churches, with

services different from the services of the English church. We call these people the Pilgrims. Some of the Pilgrims went to Holland to live, to get away from the rules of the English church and to worship as they pleased.

One day Miles met one of them. The Pilgrim said: "We are going to leave Holland. Our children are speaking Dutch and growing up like Dutch children. We want them to speak English and go to English schools. We are going to the New World, where we can live and worship as we please and have our own schools and churches."

"I shall be glad to go with you to America," said Miles Standish.

"But you do not believe as we do," the man replied.

"That makes no difference," said Miles Standish. "I am a soldier, and I stand for freedom."

When the Pilgrims set sail, Miles Standish went with them on the *Mayflower* on the long trip across the Atlantic Ocean. Standish was one of the bravest of their leaders. He helped to mend the ship when it leaked. He cheered everyone who was sad. It was two months before they reached the point of Cape Cod, where Provincetown now is. Our little Captain was one of the first on shore. He went with a few others to explore the country.

The white men were looking for Indians, but they did not see any. They came to a young tree that was

bent over. A loop of rope was fastened to it, and some acorns were thrown about. "It must be an Indian deer trap," they said. One of the men caught his foot in it. He was held by the leg and lifted into the air. How the others laughed when they saw what had happened to him!

They found Indian graves with bows and arrows, but they feared to disturb them. At last they found a mound where corn was buried. There were several bushels in a covered basket. "We need this fresh food," said Standish. "Let us take all we can carry with us. When we find the Indians, we will pay them for it."

Miles Standish and the other men made several trips along the coast before they found a good place for a settlement. They stayed away from the ship several days. One night, when they were camping, they heard a terrible cry. They thought it was wolves. The next morning Indians attacked them with bows and arrows, but the white men fired their guns and frightened the Indians away. They looked at the Indian arrows that were lying about and found that they were made of wood, with tips of horn, or eagles' claws.

At last the white men brought the *Mayflower* to the place where they wished to settle and build their homes. They called it Plymouth. Here were good water, a quiet harbor for ships, and some fields cleared by the

THE PILGRIMS CHOPPED DOWN TREES TO BUILD HOUSES.

Indians. Near by was a huge stone, which we call Plymouth Rock.

After the Pilgrims had come off the ship, they cut down trees and built a large house, where they were sheltered until a house was built for each family. Then the large house was used for a town hall. Some cannon were placed on top of it to protect them from enemies who might come into the bay. On Christmas Day, 1620, they were all working hard building cabins.

Two Indians named Samoset and Squanto came to visit the Pilgrims. Both could speak English. Samoset had learned some English words from fishermen who had come to the coast; and Squanto, who had been taken to England as a slave, spoke English quite well.

When Squanto had returned to America, he found that most of his people who lived near Plymouth had died of a dreadful illness. He told Standish that the Indians thought the white fishermen had brought an evil spirit that had made the Indians sick. That is why they were all afraid of the white men at Plymouth.

Squanto was a great help to the Pilgrims. In the spring he taught them how to trap fish in the rivers and how to plant beans, pumpkins, and corn with a part of a fish in each hill to make the plants grow. Squanto also taught the white men how to cook in Indian fashion.

Hobomak was another Indian who came to Plymouth.

He lived with Standish and was his guide wherever he went.

It was very cold the first winter. There were not enough clothes to keep the Pilgrims warm, and the food was poor. All the women and children were sick, and many of the men. At one time there were only seven men who were well enough to take care of the sick.

Miles Standish was a splendid nurse. He washed clothes and made broth and nursed the sick all through the long winter. In the spring there were only fifty-one people left in Plymouth; the others were buried on the hillside. Their graves were not marked for fear the Indians would disturb them. Among the first to die was sweet Rose Standish, the young wife of the Captain.

Standish kept all his promises to the Indians, but he would show no fear before them. They made fun of him. They thought his small size and red hair very funny. They said, "Why does the boy not stay with the women?"

One day, when Standish was on a trip, some red men got into his canoe and stole some of his things. Standish was angry when he discovered what had happened. He marched straight back to the Indian village and told the Chief to find the thief at once. The Chief did so and offered Miles some presents to make peace. Then the Indians gave Standish a new name. It was

"Little Pot That Soon Boils Over." They respected strength and courage.

The next winter one of the Indian chiefs sent a messenger to Plymouth with a bundle of arrows wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake. Hobomak told Standish that this meant war. Standish took the messenger to Bradford, who was Governor in the colony. Bradford said: "Tell your Chief that the settlers have done him no harm. If he wants war instead of peace, let him begin the fight." Then Bradford took the rattlesnake skin and filled it with powder and bullets and sent it back. The Indians were afraid of the snake skin full of powder and quickly threw it into the ocean. There was peace, and Plymouth Colony was safe.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why did Miles Standish wish to come to America?
2. Would you have liked to sail on the *Mayflower?* Why?
3. If you were going to settle in a new country, what sort of place would you choose?
4. Why did the Indians make fun of Standish's small size?
5. Why was a small white man equal to a big Indian in war?
6. How was living at Plymouth different from that at Jamestown?
7. How do you think the Pilgrims made a living—by farming, or trading, or hunting and fishing?
8. How were the houses built by the Pilgrims different from those of the Indians?

Books You Will Like

Calhoun, D. D.—*The Book of Brave Adventures*, pp. 82–95.

Hodgdon, J. R.—*First Course in American History*, pp. 101–116.

Holland, R. S.—*Historic Girlhoods*, pp. 107–123.

Long, J. A.—*Early Settlements in America*, pp. 100–122.

ROGER WILLIAMS AND RHODE ISLAND

The United States is a free country, and to-day every one of us has a right to believe and say what he thinks as long as he does not interfere with the rights of others. This has not always been so. The Pilgrims and the Puritans, who were much like the Pilgrims, came to America so that the King could no longer tell them how to worship. But the Puritans, who settled around Boston, made the same mistake the King did. They tried to tell everyone who came there just what he should believe and how he should worship.

Roger Williams was a young minister who lived with his wife and children in Salem, Massachusetts. He became a great friend of the Indians. He slept in their tents and ate their food and fished and hunted with them. He learned their language and knew how sad they were because the King of England had given their lands to the white people. When Roger Williams preached, he said: "King James has no right to give away the lands of the Indians. They should be paid for their land."

"That is treason against the King," said the leaders. "We must send Roger Williams back to England."

But Williams did not intend to go back to England.

He kept on saying what he believed. There was a law in the colony which said that everyone must go to church. After the bell had rung on Sunday, a man was sent to all the homes to see whether anyone was hiding. Everyone was forced to pay money to the church, too, whether he liked the service or not.

Roger Williams said: "No man should be forced to go to church or to worship God except as his own conscience tells him. No man should be forced to pay money to the church." Most of the Puritans did not like the words of this preacher, but some of them went secretly to hear him preach.

The leaders decided to put Williams in prison. Williams knew that they were coming to take him; so one night, when the snow was falling and the winds howling, he kissed his wife and children good-by, left his home, and went into the wilderness. He took a wooden staff and a bundle of food. For several days he slept in hollow trees, for he traveled only at night. He ate acorns that he dug from under the snow, and killed rabbits and squirrels, which he cooked at a fire. Sometimes he stayed with friendly Indians. They gave him food, and skins to cover him.

Roger's heart was very sad. "My people have driven me away from home for saying what I believe. Perhaps I had better make my home with the Indians, for they are my friends." But then he thought of others who would like to worship as they pleased, too. Then he

ROGER WILLIAMS LEFT HIS HOME AND WENT INTO THE WILDERNESS.

said, "I will make a colony where such people may come and be truly free."

Williams went to Chief Massasoit and said: "My people have driven me away from home because I told them that they ought to pay the Indians for their land. I am cold and hungry and tired." Chief Massasoit took Williams into his wigwam and covered him with skins. When Williams was rested, the Chief said, "Stay here until the winter is gone, and the white men shall not hurt you."

In the spring, Roger Williams bought land from Massasoit. Then he sent for his wife and children and the friends who used to come secretly to hear him preach. He called the place Providence, because he said that there the Lord had provided a place for all people who wished to have freedom of belief.

This was the beginning of the state of Rhode Island. We honor Roger Williams as the father of the first colony which stood for our American right to think and worship freely.

Now the strangest and most beautiful part of the story remains. The people who had persecuted Roger Williams and had driven him from home learned, some years later, that the Indians were planning to attack Plymouth and Boston. They came and begged Williams to talk with the red men and persuade them to give up their plan. Williams forgave his enemies and went out alone to meet the angry Indians. They

knew that he was their friend, and so he was able to keep them from attacking the colonists.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do we mean by the right to believe and talk as we wish?
2. Why was Roger Williams driven away from Salem?
3. Do you think that Williams was wise in saying what he thought was the truth?
4. How did the Indians treat Williams? Why?
5. What would you think of Roger Williams if he had preached what others believed and stayed in Salem?
6. What showed that Williams had a forgiving heart?

Books You Will Like

Long, J. A.—*Early Settlements in America*, pp. 212–213.
Olcott, T. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 348–355.
Pratt, M. L.—*America's Story*, Bk. III, pp. 152–158.

PETER STUYVESANT OF NEW YORK

The people of Holland sent Henry Hudson on a long exploring trip. During this trip he discovered the Hudson River. Then the Dutch sent a colony to make a settlement at the mouth of this river. They called their tiny village New Amsterdam. Little did they know that one day it would grow into the largest city in the New World. To-day it is called New York.

Three hundred years ago New Amsterdam was a country village. The Dutch people lived here peacefully in their little wooden houses. Every man who could afford it sent back to Holland for black and yellow bricks to make the part of his house that faced the street, because these were what they had used at home. Every family had a garden where it could grow vegetables and flowers, and a yard where it could keep hens, pigs, and a cow.

As New Amsterdam grew larger the cows were driven out of the city every day to graze. In the morning a herdsman drove them out, and at night he drove them back again and left them to be milked, each cow at her own gate. As he came into the city he blew a horn to let the master know that his cow had come home to be milked. The children came with pieces of bread,

and bowls to hold the fresh milk. Then they sat down on the steps of their homes to eat their supper.

The Dutch liked good things to eat. They sent their ships for sugar and molasses, and on every holiday they made many cakes and other sweet things. They were very fond of cabbage. The Dutchman liked his pipe, and the Dutch wife was proud of her bright-colored dishes and her chests of linen. For many years these people lived in New Amsterdam, trading for furs with the Indians and enjoying all the good things that came their way.

Then a great change came. The last Governor of New Amsterdam was a soldier named Peter Stuyvesant (stī′vĕ-sănt). He was a rough old fellow with a wooden leg, of which he was very proud. He had lost his own leg while fighting bravely. He had silver bands put on the wooden leg, and he said that he prized it more than all his other limbs put together. It is said that sometimes, when his people would not obey him, he beat them with this wooden leg. The people of New Amsterdam called him Old Silver Leg, and the Indians called him Father Wooden Leg.

Old Silver Leg had several people to help him rule the colony, but they would rather sit and smoke than make laws, and so they let Peter Stuyvesant have his way about everything.

One day there was great excitement in the village. A man who came from Boston told the Governor some

PETER STUYVESANT SAID, "I WILL NOT SURRENDER."

disturbing news. He said that the King of England claimed the country the Dutch had settled and that he had given it to his brother, the Duke of York. There was then a fleet of ships on the way to take New Amsterdam for England.

What could poor Old Silver Leg do? He had only one little fort, with scarcely a hundred soldiers and very little powder. He hurried about on his wooden leg and tried to get men to build a bigger fort, but his people would not help him. How could he fight the English without an army?

Then the ships of the Duke of York came and landed their soldiers on Long Island, near by. They ordered Stuyvesant to surrender, but he wrote to the English Captain, saying: "The Dutch discovered this land and bought it of the Indians. They settled it, and it belongs to them. What right have you to take it from them?"

The Captain replied: "I am sent by the King of England to take it. If you will yield peaceably, I will give every man his freedom and let him keep his property."

There were many Englishmen now living in New Amsterdam, and of course they were eager to be under English rule again. They begged their Dutch neighbors not to fight. They told Old Silver Leg to surrender, but he said: "I will not surrender. We must defend New Amsterdam and keep it for the Dutch."

News went through the city: "The English Captain has offered good terms if we will surrender. He has sent a letter to the Governor." A crowd gathered about the village meeting room and asked that the letter be read, but Old Silver Leg roared, "It shall never be read to you, for you are too cowardly to fight," and he pounded the floor with his wooden leg, tore the letter into small pieces, and threw them out the window.

"We want to hear the letter," shouted the people. Someone picked up the pieces, put them together, and read from the steps of the building the Captain's offer of treaty. A paper was then sent to the Governor, signed by all the people, asking him to agree to the treaty, but Stuyvesant tore it up and threw away his pen.

Then the English Captain said, "I will turn ninety guns upon the city at once." Old Silver Leg had only twenty guns, but he locked himself in his room and would not listen to the people, who begged him to sign the treaty before the English guns should destroy their peaceful village. They even put the treaty through his window, tied to a long pole.

When Peter Stuyvesant saw that there was no one who was willing to help him defend the town of New Amsterdam, he signed the treaty, tossed it out the window, and slammed the shutters in great anger. Poor, brave Old Silver Leg! How disappointed he was!

But he lived long enough to enjoy himself under English rule.

So it was that New Amsterdam surrendered to the English and was named New York for its new owner.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What were some of the customs of the early Dutch?

2. Draw a picture of a house like those the Dutch settlers lived in. Perhaps your teacher will show you some pictures of the village of New Amsterdam so that you will be able to make a very good drawing.

3. Write a play about Old Silver Leg and his people, and let some of your classmates dramatize it.

Books You Will Like

Dickson, M. S.—*Camp and Trail in Early American History*, pp. 129–148.

Irving, Washington—*Knickerbocker's History of New York.*

Long, J. A.—*Early Settlements in America*, pp. 279–308.

WILLIAM PENN OF PENNSYLVANIA

William Penn was the son of a sea captain who was in the service of King Charles of England. This captain sent his son to college and hoped that he would become a great soldier, but instead William became a Quaker. The Quakers were people who believed in peace and would not fight. They would neither go to war nor pay taxes to carry on war. William was a firm and earnest Quaker and believed as the other Quakers did. He put on a gray suit and a broad hat and asked his friends to address him as Friend William instead of Mr. Penn. He said "thee" and "thou" instead of "you" when he spoke to others.

One day a young man met William and started a quarrel with him. "I challenge you to a duel," he said. Penn was forced to defend himself, but he would not hurt the youth. Having learned to fence at college, he soon ended the duel by skillfully knocking the sword from the other man's hand.

Penn's father was angry with his son because he had become a Quaker. He sent William Penn to France to have a good time and forget about his new beliefs. William had a gay time and learned to speak several languages, but he remained a faithful Quaker.

After Penn's father died, William went to see King Charles, who had borrowed a great deal of his money. All the courtiers stood before the King with their hats off, for that was a way of doing honor to His Majesty. But Penn stood boldly before the King with his hat on his head, for his religion taught him that all men are brothers, and that one need not take off his hat even to a king.

The King smiled, took off his own hat, and bowed before the young Quaker.

"Why dost thou take off thy hat, Friend Charles?" asked William.

"Because it is the custom for only one man to be covered in my presence," replied the King. He wished to show William how impolite he had been.

The King, who had no money, offered to pay his debt by giving William some land in the New World. This pleased Penn, for he wanted to make a home far away where the Quakers might live in peace.

"Good-by, William," said the King, "I shall probably never see you again, for the Indians will boil you alive."

"Nay, Friend Charles," said Penn, "I shall make friends with the Indians, for I shall pay them for their land."

"Why buy land that already belongs to England? Did we not discover it?" asked the King.

"Friend Charles," said Penn, "suppose that a canoe

THE KING TOOK OFF HIS HAT AND BOWED BEFORE THE YOUNG QUAKER.

full of red men should come to England and stop on its shores. Would they own this land because they discovered it?"

The King could not reply to this question.

Penn sent out booklets printed in German, French, and English, inviting people to come to his colony, which was called Pennsylvania. He said, "Those who come shall be governed by laws of their own making, shall live a free and busy life, and shall think as they please."

When Penn himself came to America, he made laws for the colony like those we have to-day. No man was to be put to death except for murder or treason. He should always have a trial. No one could be put in prison for debt. All children were to be taught a useful trade. Any dispute between an Indian and a white man was to be tried by a jury of six white men and six Indians.

Sometimes Penn sat on the ground and ate acorns and hominy with the Indians, and sometimes he danced and played games with them. He paid them for all the land he had. Under a large elm tree he made a treaty with the red men. Then he laid out near by a city which he called Philadelphia, or City of Brotherly Love.

The Indians said, "We will be friends of the white man so long as the stars and the sun shall shine." The Chief gave Penn a long belt of wampum, or

beads, as a sign of their friendship. This can be seen to-day in Philadelphia.

Penn was true to all his promises to the red men, and the Indians were loyal to him. It is said that no Indian would harm a white man who was wearing a Quaker's gray coat.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How were Quakers different from other people?
2. Do you think that Penn's father should have scolded his son because of his Quaker religion? How would you have acted if you were Penn's father?
3. Do you think that the Indians should have been paid for their land?
4. How was William Penn like Roger Williams?
5. Dramatize the story of the meeting of Penn and the Indians near the elm tree.
6. How do you like the Quaker costume?
7. Do you think the Quakers would be good neighbors? Why?

Books You Will Like

Hodgdon, J. R.—*First Course in American History*, pp. 201–214.

Holland, R. S.—*William Penn.*

Olcott, F. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 30–42.

Pratt, M. L.—*America's Story*, Bk. III, pp. 158–166.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, FATHER OF OUR COUNTRY

George Washington grew up on a plantation in Virginia and received most of the education he had at a little school. He learned to write very well, and when he grew older he was taught how to measure, or survey, land. He learned to live in the woods, sleep on the ground, cook his own food, and ride a horse from morning till night.

When George was a young man, the Governor of Virginia wished to send a message forbidding a French officer to build a fort on English land near what is today the city of Pittsburgh. It was five hundred miles through trackless forests to this place. There were neither roads nor bridges. The word must be taken by a trusty messenger who was not afraid of Indians, wild beasts, or cold weather.

Because he knew how to take care of himself in the wild, rough country, George Washington was chosen to make the trip. Christopher Gist was his companion. With some Indians and a few other brave men as guides, they set out. Winter was coming, and they had to sleep on the frozen ground. They lived on what game they could shoot or what food they could get from the Indian wigwams.

When Washington reached the French, the commander was very polite, but he seemed in no hurry to answer the Governor's letter. He said: "I am under orders to build this fort, and I must follow orders; but if you will wait, I will send back a letter to your Governor. Meanwhile, be my guests."

"I hope he won't take too much time about the letter," said Gist.

"We must be patient," said Washington. "Let us make the best of our time. We will learn all the facts about the fort and get hold of any plans we can find."

Around the camp were many Indians as well as Frenchmen. Washington and Gist heard the soldiers talking and found out where other forts were and where the French got their supplies.

It was just before Christmas when the French commander gave Washington a sealed letter to take back to the Governor. Then he ordered food put into canoes for Washington and his men so that they could go down the river and meet their horses below. Soon they were mounted and riding toward home. In the cold weather the horses perished, and Washington and Gist started on alone through the forest on foot.

One day they picked up an Indian guide. Gist said, "I think I saw that fellow around the fort, and I believe he was told to follow us and kill us when we get into the woods."

But Washington said, "We must have a guide."

The guide took Washington's pack and led the way. Sure enough, when they came to a lonely place, the Indian, who was a few steps ahead, turned suddenly and fired his gun at the white men. Then he ran forward and hid behind a tree.

"I have caught him," called Gist, "Are you hurt?"

"No," said Washington. "Do not kill him, but take away his gun and bind his arms and make him walk behind us." Later they let the treacherous guide go.

Washington and Gist soon came to a wide river and camped on its bank. It was so cold that they thought it would be frozen over the next morning, and that they could cross on the ice. But when morning came, they were disappointed. They made a raft of logs and started to cross on it, but the raft was soon caught in the floating ice; and Washington, who tried to pry it loose, was thrown into the freezing water. At last they got to an island and dried their clothing by a brush fire. The next morning the ice was firm enough to bear them up, and they walked across on it.

In spite of cold weather, Indians, and lack of food, Washington brought the message safely to the Governor. He had been gone three months and had traveled a thousand miles through the wilderness.

George grew to be a very large man. Do you know a man who measures two inches over six feet and weighs two hundred twenty pounds? Imagine him in military clothes, sitting very erect on a splendid

horse. George Washington's friends said that he was the most graceful figure of his time on horseback. He was very handsome and dignified and dressed in fine clothes. We can see in his pictures his ruffled shirt, scarlet vest, and blue coat. He wore silver trimmings on his hat and on his shoes.

Washington had a beautiful home at Mount Vernon, near what is now the city of Washington. There for many years he lived with his gracious wife, Martha Washington.

When the colonies got into trouble with England over their rights, Washington went to Philadelphia to meet men from the other colonies in a gathering called the Continental Congress; and when war with England began, he was made Commander-in-Chief of the army of the United States.

During the war, George and Martha Washington wore homespun clothes, which were the only kind made in the United States. One day some fine ladies came to call on Martha Washington. They found her in a plain dress and a checked apron. She was knitting stockings for the soldiers. Her guests felt very foolish indeed in their silks and satins from England.

Though he was commander of the army, Washington endured all the hardships his soldiers did. Once at Christmas time the soldiers and the people at home were much discouraged. There had been no victory for the Americans for some time. Washington's army

was hungry and only half clothed. He said: "A victory would give us all courage. Across the Delaware River at Trenton are Hessian (or German) soldiers, hired by the King of England to fight against us. They are preparing to celebrate Christmas and not expecting a battle. We will go over and take them by surprise."

That night Washington called his men together at the river's edge, where fishermen were waiting with boats.

"To-morrow," he said, "if you can stand this night, we shall have a great victory."

The river was full of blocks of ice, and the wind was sharp and stinging, but they set forth. The boats were nearly upset, and one man was frozen. It was a terrible trip, but at last they were on the other side. Then there were nine miles to march before they reached Trenton. Their clothing wet with spray, they had to face a blinding snowstorm. On went the brave men. They fell sometimes and got up again. They thought of their dear ones at home and kept going.

Meanwhile, the Hessians and their leader, Colonel Rall, were feasting and having a good time.

"Here's to Washington's army," they said. "We shall soon finish them when we meet them."

Colonel Rall was playing cards with his host before a roaring fire. A servant came in and handed him a letter, but he was busy with the game and put it in his

THE RIVER WAS FULL OF ICE AND THE WIND WAS SHARP AND STINGING, BUT THEY SET FORTH.

pocket without reading it. Late that night he fell asleep without thinking of it.

In the meantime, Washington and his poor half-frozen soldiers were coming nearer and nearer. The next morning the general and his brave men were drawn up for battle, but the Hessians, who were surprised, were not ready. When a hundred of them had fallen, the rest surrendered.

Rall was wounded so badly that he could not live. "Give me the letter from my pocket," he said to his nurse. It was read to him, and in it was a warning that Washington and his soldiers were on the way.

Washington led the colonists to their freedom, and with his help the United States became a nation. Then he was chosen the first President of the new nation. Our favorite name for him is Father of Our Country.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was Washington a good man to send on a wilderness journey?
2. What do you think of the way Washington treated the treacherous Indian?
3. Let one of your classmates tell the story of Washington's return from the French camp.
4. Describe Washington as you think he probably looked.
5. Collect pictures of George and Martha Washington and Mount Vernon.
6. Practice using the words in your word list in a conversation.

Books You Will Like

Baldwin, James—*Four Great Americans*, pp. 9–62.

Elson, H. W.—*Side Lights on American History* (revised edition), Bk. I, pp. 24–25, 98–104.

Morgan, James—*Our Presidents* (school edition), pp. 1–13.

Pratt, M. L.—*America's Story*, Bk. IV, pp. 43–60.

Rideing, W. H.—*George Washington.*

Stimpson, M. S.—*Child's Book of American Biography*, pp. 1–8.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, THE MAN OF COMMON SENSE

One day, as a young girl named Deborah Reed was swinging on her father's gate in the Quaker city of Philadelphia, she saw a lad of seventeen pass by. He was an awkward, clumsy fellow, with wrinkled clothing. Under each arm was a large, crusty roll of bread, and he ate another roll as he walked along. Deborah thought him the funniest sight she had ever seen. She laughed loud and long. Little did she know that she was making fun of a boy who was going to be one of the greatest men of our history. Far less did she dream that one day she would be very proud to become the wife of this odd-looking boy, whose name was Benjamin Franklin.

Benjamin Franklin had come from Boston and was looking for work. He was the son of a poor man of Boston, who supported his family of seventeen children by boiling soap and making candles. It was a good business, for candles were used for lighting homes in those days. But Benjamin did not like it; he preferred to read and study.

Benjamin had learned printing in his elder brother's

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN WAS HUNGRY AND TIRED WHEN HE REACHED PHILADELPHIA.

office. He had been in school only two years, but he had read every book he could get his hands on and learned to spell by setting the type for printing. He could write very well, too.

Ben thought that he could write some articles as good as those that were published in his brother's paper. One night he wrote an article in a changed handwriting and stuck it under the door of his brother's shop. His brother read it and, thinking it was written by some older man, put it in print. Ben wrote other articles in the same way, and they too were published in the paper.

One day his brother said, "I should like to know who it is that is writing these fine articles for my paper. He surely is very sensible." Benjamin was pleased, but he was too wise to spoil it all by saying that he was the author.

But now Benjamin had quarreled with his brother and left Boston to make his own way in the world. Because he could set type well, he found work in a printer's office in Philadelphia.

Some time after this he met a man who wanted him to print a paper of his own. He told Franklin to go to England for a press and promised to send him the money for it. Benjamin went to England, expecting to find the money in a letter when he reached London; but when he arrived there, he found that the man had failed to send it. Ben was obliged to stay nearly two

years in England before he could earn enough money to pay his way back.

But traveling is even better than going to school for one who has keen eyes and thinks things out for himself. Franklin read and studied about everything he saw; and when he came back to Philadelphia, he had a great many new ideas to put in the newspaper which he printed.

Philadelphia was now quite a big city, but when it rained the streets were deep with mud. Franklin had seen streets paved with cobblestones in London. "Why," he asked in his paper, "do we not make a hard surface for our streets to save wear and tear on our carriages?" Soon the main streets of the city were paved.

"Why not have large lamps to light the streets so that we can see where we are going at night?" asked this young writer, and the streets of Philadelphia were soon lighted.

"Let us drill a fire company to put out fires," said Franklin. The Union Fire Company was formed to do this very thing.

"There are many people who like to read books but cannot buy them," said Franklin. "Let us have a public library, where books may be borrowed." It was a fine idea, and the first public library in America was started.

If you will look on the cover of a magazine that

many boys to-day know very well, you will see the words "Founded by Benjamin Franklin."

Franklin wrote a pamphlet called *Poor Richard's Almanac.* In it were a great many wise and witty sayings that we use every day, such as: "Never leave for to-morrow what you can do to-day"; "Silks and satins put out the kitchen fire"; "It is hard for an empty bag to stand upright"; and "Early to bed and early to rise."

Franklin belonged to the Leather Apron Club. They sent to London for two hundred good books to read. At the club they also talked about the Stamp Act. King George of England had said that a stamp bought in England must be put on all books, newspapers, and law papers in America. The colonists thought the Stamp Act taxed them unjustly.

Franklin was sent over to London to talk to the lawmakers of England about taxing the colonies.

"How does America feel about England?" they asked Franklin.

"We love England and respect her," said Franklin.

"Will your people pay the tax ordered in the Stamp Act if it is not too large?" they asked.

"Never," Franklin replied. "We will stop buying anything from England."

"But the colonists must buy cloth and other things made in England. You cannot make them at home," said the Englishmen.

"We wear English cloth now," said Franklin, "but if we must pay a tax on it, we will keep all our own lambs, card our own wool, and weave cloth in our own homes. Every house in the colonies has a loom and a spinning wheel."

"If we repeal the Stamp Act, will the colonists pay a tax to England?" they asked.

"No," said Franklin.

The Stamp Act was repealed, but the English thought of another way to raise money. The colonists did not like this way any better. They declared that they would be free from England and have their own government. The paper in which they said this is called the Declaration of Independence.

Franklin was seventy years old when he signed the Declaration of Independence. He hated war. In *Poor Richard's Almanac* he said, "There never was a good war nor a bad peace." Franklin was too old to fight even if he would, but he went to France to get aid from the French King and lived to sign the treaty of peace that closed the Revolutionary War.

Benjamin Franklin, besides knowing how to run a newspaper, knew a great deal about science. He was one of the first to experiment with electricity, which is the greatest power we have to-day. He saw the lightning flash across the sky and said: "The air is full of electricity. It must be the same thing as lightning, and I think that I can prove it." One day he made a

silk kite and went out to fly it in a thunderstorm. He drew electric sparks with his knuckles from a key at the end of the kite string and in this way proved that he was right.

Franklin was an inventor, too. He invented a new kind of stove, which is used to this day, and many other things. Few of our great men could do so many different things as Franklin.

He was loved at home and in Europe. Benjamin Franklin was often called "America's patron (or guardian) saint of common sense." His long life of eighty-four years was full of service to his country. There are now one hundred thirty-six towns and places in the United States named for Franklin. Perhaps you know one of them.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How do you think a poor boy can become great?
2. Was it right for Ben to write articles without his name on them and put them under his brother's door?
3. How do you think young Ben felt when he saw his articles printed in his brother's paper?
4. What were some of the wise sayings of Franklin, and what do they mean?
5. What sensible ideas did Franklin suggest for his home city?
6. How did Franklin prove that lightning and electricity are the same thing? Would you like to try such an experiment?
7. How does one learn by travel?

Books You Will Like

Baldwin, James—*Four Great Americans*, pp. 69–114.

Bird, G. E., and Starling, Maud—*Historical Plays for Children*, pp. 199–220.

Dudley, E. L.—*Benjamin Franklin.*

Hodgdon, J. R.—*First Course in American History*, pp. 244–259.

Olcott, F. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 164–172.

Stimpson, M. S.—*Child's Book of American Biography*, pp. 36–45.

PATRICK HENRY, THE GREAT ORATOR

In the days when there were few newspapers and the mails were slow because they were carried by men on horseback instead of on trains and airplanes, many ideas were spread about by great speakers, or orators. One of the greatest orators our land has ever known was Patrick Henry. It is said that he "rocked the world" with his voice.

In the early days of Virginia, the King of England appointed the ministers of the church. Tobacco was used for money. There was an old law in Virginia saying that the people must pay their parson sixteen thousand pounds of tobacco every year. Times had changed, and the people of Virginia made a new law which allowed them to pay a smaller sum in money. The King declared that it was not a good law, and he set it aside. Some of the parsons got together and sued for the rest of their money. The case was called "The Parson's Cause." The object of the trial was to see whether the King had a right to meddle any longer with the laws of Virginia.

No one wanted to take the case against the parsons and displease the King. At last a young lawyer offered to defend the rights of Virginia. "What! Pat Henry!"

said all the people. "He cannot know how to take part in a law case; he has not had enough practice. The King's lawyer will soon make an end of him, you may be sure."

When Patrick Henry rose to make his speech, he was trembling so that he was hardly able to speak. His father was the judge, and he trembled for his son. But when Patrick was once well started, the words poured from his lips. He felt so certain he was right on the question that he put all the fire he could into his speech. He said: "The people of Virginia have a right to make their own laws. If the King interferes, he is no longer a father to us; he is a tyrant! Why should we obey the laws of a tyrant?"

He grew more and more in earnest as he went on; and when he finished speaking, the jury was so carried away with his words that they gave the parsons just one penny more than the Virginia law allowed. Then the people who had made fun of Patrick Henry lifted him on their shoulders and carried him out of the court-house, cheering loudly.

This success aroused Patrick Henry to become a great lawyer. He gave up his habit of idling about the tavern or spending his days fishing. He learned to speak correctly and made a speech whenever he had the chance. Now many people brought him law cases, and he was so sure of himself and could speak so well that he won one case after another.

PATRICK HENRY GREW MORE AND MORE IN EARNEST AS HE WENT ON.

Patrick Henry had thought a great deal about the tyranny of the King, and he believed that the colonies would soon have their freedom. Ten years before the colonies fought for freedom, he was talking about it whenever he had a chance. He has often been called the Firebrand of the Revolution, for he was fearless when others were afraid to speak out. Over and over he said, "The colonies must be free!"

An old friend named Thomas Jefferson heard him speaking one day as he passed the courthouse. Jefferson stood looking and listening in amazement. He went back to his work, saying: "Just think what Pat has made of himself. While I can never be a great speaker like that, I can write as well as he can speak, and I am going to work for independence, too." And so he did, as you will learn in a later chapter.

It was not long after this that Patrick Henry made his best known speech. It is so simple and clear that we may all understand it. He said:

"Gentlemen may cry, 'Peace, peace,' but there is no peace. The war has actually begun. The next gale that sweeps from the North will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. Our brethren are already in the field. Why stand we here idle? . . . Is life so dear or peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God. I know not what course others may take, but as for me give me liberty or give me death."

These words of the great orator Patrick Henry fired the hearts of hundreds to fight for freedom.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What did people mean when they said that Patrick Henry "rocked the world" with his voice?

2. Why did Henry tremble when he spoke against the parsons?

3. Can you tell, by looking at a boy, all that he might make of himself?

4. Henry was a great speaker; Jefferson, a great writer. Which would you rather become? Why?

5. Why was Patrick Henry called the Firebrand of the Revolution?

6. Learn the part of Henry's great speech that is in this chapter, and see who can say it best.

Books You Will Like

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 115–119.

Olcott, F. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 315–323

THREE BRAVE MEN OF BOSTON

The King of England wanted money from the colonists in America; and so, as you know, he ordered them to buy stamps for all their newspapers, books, and law papers. You also know that the King's order was called the Stamp Act, and that the colonists thought it unjust.

The colonists were not willing to pay a tax to England because she would not let them send men to represent them in Parliament, where the laws were made. They said, "No taxation without representation."

While Benjamin Franklin and Patrick Henry were talking against the Stamp Act and other laws of the King which they thought unfair, there were three brave men in Boston, Samuel and John Adams and John Hancock, who were doing all they could against having laws for the colonies made in England. They said that the colonists should make their own laws.

Samuel and John Adams were two bright young lawyers, whose fathers were cousins. For many years they worked together for the freedom of the colonies.

John Hancock was another young worker for freedom. He was a wealthy man, whose ships went to and from

the harbor of Boston, and he had spent some years in England.

John Hancock was known in Boston by his coats of broadcloth laced with gold, his velvet breeches, and his green or blue silk stockings. In his gay dress of velvet and lace, with a gold-headed cane, he often led a procession of citizens down the streets of Boston, shouting for the rights of the people.

The King of England called John Hancock a traitor. He called Samuel Adams the "arch rebel," or chief rebel, for Samuel Adams took part in all the public meetings of Boston against the King.

Samuel Adams wrote for the papers, signing different names to his articles. He said: "If taxes are laid upon us without our being represented, we are not free subjects of the King. We are miserable slaves." He wrote letters to some of the colonists in Virginia and New York and told them the troubles of Boston.

When the King sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston, Samuel Adams, who was head of the Assembly, or group of lawmakers, ordered the British Governor to withdraw them.

"I will send away *one* regiment," said the Governor.

"Both or nothing," was Samuel Adams' bold answer.

The British Governor resigned and went back to England. "Punish that Adams," he said. "Every dip of his pen stings like a horned snake."

At last every tax was removed from the colonists

except the one on tea. Now the people of Boston loved their tea, but they had to get it from England, and England had put a tax on it. They therefore refused to drink tea. The women served a drink made of raspberry leaves. Tea ships stood in the harbor, but the colonists said that the tea chests should not be landed. Samual Adams, in a stirring speech, said that the tea must be sent back to England.

His cousin, John Adams, said: "Let us eat potatoes and drink water instead of British tea. Let us wear canvas and undressed sheepskins rather than buy cloth from England and be ruled unjustly by the King."

One night a signal was given, and fifty men, disguised as Mohawk Indians, hurried down to the wharf, climbed over the sides of the tea ships, cut open the chests, and dumped the tea into the harbor. Then the sound of fife and drum was heard, and the "Mohawks" headed a great number of people in a march through the city streets. Samuel Adams and John Hancock both knew a good deal about this Boston Tea Party.

The British Parliament said: "We will punish these rebels. We will close the port of Boston. All ships shall be forbidden to enter."

Other rights were taken from the people of Boston, and an army officer, General Gage, was sent to be the British Governor of Massachusetts.

Gage said to Samuel Adams, "I will give you a title and a pension if you will stop arousing the people."

THEY CLIMBED OVER THE SIDES OF THE SHIPS AND DUMPED THE TEA INTO THE HARBOR.

Adams said, "I am a poor man, but I spurn your offer."

Adams and his committee of helpers wrote at once to the colonists of New York, Virginia, and Pennsylvania, asking them to stand by the people of Boston and refuse to be taxed.

When the port of Boston was closed, John Hancock's ships could not leave the wharves, and his business was ruined. But he was willing to use the money he had to help the colonies win freedom. A congress, or assembly, of men from all the colonies was called to meet at Philadelphia, and John and Samuel Adams went from Boston. John Hancock stayed to look after things at home, but it is said that he helped pay the way of Samuel Adams, while John Adams furnished the horses which they rode.

At the second meeting of the congress—or Continental Congress, as it was called—held a year later, John Hancock was made president of the Congress. John Adams nominated George Washington from Virginia for Commander-in-Chief of the Army, and Samuel Adams seconded the nomination.

John Hancock longed to fight in the field, but he had no training as a soldier. He could do other things, though. The Revolutionary War was not won by brave generals alone, for the Continental Congress had to provide food for the armies, guns, powder, and clothing.

Our brave patriots did good teamwork in Congress.

Samuel Adams and Thomas Jefferson could write, and they spread news of the doings of Congress. John Adams and Benjamin Franklin were sent across the sea to get help for the colonies.

Samuel Adams was for many years Governor of Massachusetts. He gave his whole life to serving the people and died a poor man.

John Adams became the second President of the United States. He was the only President we have had whose son also became President.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What better way can you think of in which the colonists could have paid taxes than by the Stamp Act?
2. Do you think the tax on tea was a better plan? Why?
3. Why did the King hate John Hancock and John and Samuel Adams?
4. Dramatize the Boston Tea Party.
5. Name all the men you have so far read about who helped us win our independence.

Books You Will like

Morgan, James—*Our Presidents* (school edition), pp. 14-19.
Olcott, F. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 72-92.
Pratt, M. L.—*America's Story*, Bk. V, pp. 9-57.

PAUL REVERE'S RIDE

After the storm had risen about the Stamp Act and the tea had been dumped into Boston Harbor, King George, as you know, was so angry that he sent British soldiers to Boston to see that his laws were obeyed. Although the soldiers lived on their ships in Boston Harbor, they were often in the city streets. The colonists were enraged about this, but they had no army to drive the soldiers away.

"We must get ready to fight," said John Hancock and Samuel Adams. Companies of farmers were quietly drilled and told to keep their guns ready, as they might be called to fight at a minute's notice. For this reason they were called "minutemen."

There must be powder and shot ready for the guns, spades and axes to build forts, and flour and salt meat for the soldiers. All these stores of war, as they are called, were brought together for the minutemen at Concord, which is not far from Boston.

Paul Revere was not a soldier. He was a goldsmith who lived in Boston, but he was a true patriot and a brave man. He was put at the head of a group of scouts who were to keep a close watch on the British

soldiers in the harbor and let the colonists know what they seemed likely to do.

One day these men noticed that the British soldiers were very busy. They were hurrying about. The scouts followed some of them and overheard a word here and there. They learned that the British were planning to go to Concord that night to capture the stores of the colonists. They also expected to capture Samuel Adams and John Hancock on the way and make them prisoners.

Paul Revere and William Dawes were sent to warn the colonists. In those days there were no telephones or telegraphs, not even a regular mail. They must ride on horseback with the message.

But they had not yet learned how the British were going to Concord. They could go by water to Charlestown Neck or they could march by land from Boston. Paul Revere said to his man: "You must watch and give me a signal when they start. I will row to Charlestown after dark. From there I can see the tower of North Church. Hang one lantern in the tower if they go by land; if they go by water, hang two lanterns."

Paul Revere waited with his horse on the Charlestown shore, watching the tower. Hour after hour passed. It was nearly midnight when he saw a light. Then he saw another. Two lights meant that the soldiers were on their way by water to Charlestown.

PAUL REVERE SHOUTED AT EVERY FARMHOUSE, "MINUTEMEN, ASSEMBLE!"

There was no time to lose. Revere jumped on the back of his faithful horse and galloped away.

"Halt!" cried two English soldiers who guarded the road. "Get off your horse," they shouted. "Where are you going?"

But Paul Revere galloped straight on in the darkness. He shouted in every village and called at every farmhouse: "The British are on the way to Concord! Minutemen, assemble!" He stopped to warn Hancock and Adams, who were at Lexington, and they slipped away to safety.

"How we'll surprise those stupid farmers!" laughed the British. "In the morning they will be looking for their stores."

The next morning in Lexington, which is on the way to Concord, the British soldiers found a group of seventy men with their guns in their hands.

"Disperse, you rebels," shouted the British officer, but the minutemen stood firm.

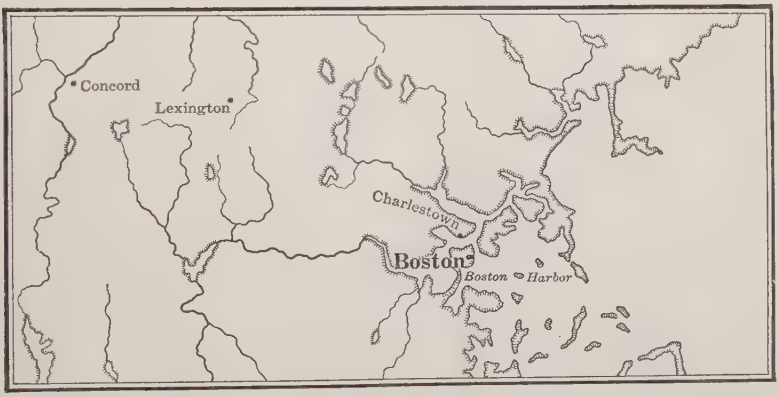
"Fire," came the command to the British troops.

Eighteen brave minutemen were killed or wounded, but the rest fired back. Then they saw another company of British soldiers coming, and they had to retreat.

The British marched on to Concord, expecting to destroy the stores, but by the time they got there the colonists had moved them to a safer place. The British were so angry that they destroyed the little

that was left, a few barrels of flour, and burned the courthouse.

By now there had gathered near Concord bridge four hundred brave minutemen. They were not trained to fight like the British, in ranks and columns. They fought like the Indians, hiding behind trees, walls, and stumps. They followed the British soldiers, in



OUR FIRST BATTLES FOR LIBERTY WERE FOUGHT AT LEXINGTON AND CONCORD.

their red coats, as they returned to Boston, and fired at them. At last the redcoats broke ranks and ran for their lives. Other English soldiers came from Boston with cannon to protect them. This drove the minutemen back for a time.

But more and more minutemen kept coming. At last they drove the British headlong back to Charlestown and their ships, leaving behind them two hundred forty-seven killed.

These battles at Lexington and Concord, where the minutemen so bravely defended their rights, were the first battles of the Revolutionary War.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did the scout give Revere the signal?
2. Why did not the British capture the stores at Concord?
3. Why were the "minutemen" given this name?
4. Draw a picture of the minutemen fighting from behind rocks and trees.
5. Do you suppose that the small boys from the farms saw some of this fight? Write a conversation that might have occurred between two boys about this running fight as the British returned to Boston.

A Book You Will Like

Pratt, M. L.—*America's Story*, Bk. V, pp. 62-74.

THOMAS JEFFERSON AND THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

Thomas Jefferson, like Patrick Henry and George Washington, grew up in Virginia. His father had a large tobacco farm and plenty of money. Thomas received a fine education. He wore handsome clothes, for he was one of the wealthiest men of Virginia. He married a beautiful wife.

When Jefferson was twenty, he became a lawyer. It was while he was a student in college that he heard a speech by Patrick Henry which roused him to stand with the colonists of Virginia against England. Thomas Jefferson was not an orator himself because he had a poor voice, but he could write very well, as you know.

Jefferson often met Washington and Patrick Henry. They, like John and Samuel Adams and John Hancock of Boston, declared the colonists should not be taxed unless they could be represented in England.

Jefferson was thirty-two when he rode to the First Continental Congress at Philadelphia and met the delegates from the other colonies. John Adams said: "Jefferson has a happy way of writing. Let us ask him to help write of the doings of Congress."

On June 7, 1776, Richard Henry Lee rose in the

Continental Congress and made this motion: "These united colonies are and of a right ought to be free and independent states." The motion was seconded by John Adams. A committee was then appointed, with Thomas Jefferson at its head, to write the Declaration of Independence. Three weeks later he read the paper he had prepared.

On July 4, 1776, the Continental Congress voted in favor of the Declaration of Independence. A large bell in the tower of the hall was rung loud and long to let the people of Philadelphia know what had happened, and men mounted on horseback galloped off to take the news to the other colonists.

Since that day, the Fourth of July is celebrated all over the country as Independence Day. The old Liberty Bell is now cracked, but it may still be seen in Independence Hall in Philadelphia.

Jefferson's Declaration was signed by fifty-six members of Congress. The first man to sign his name was the president, John Hancock. Hancock was a fine penman. He wrote his name as large as he could with his quill pen, saying, "I want the King of England to read this without his spectacles."

Thomas Jefferson signed next and then John Adams.

Benjamin Franklin laughed as he took the pen. He said, "We must all hang together or we shall all hang separately."

Among the others who signed the Declaration of

THE FIRST MAN TO SIGN THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE WAS JOHN HANCOCK.

Independence were Richard Henry Lee, Robert Morris, a wealthy man who offered his own money to carry on the war when none could be found elsewhere, and Samuel Adams, who worked hard for freedom and gave all his time to his country.

Thomas Jefferson became the third President of the United States. He and John Adams both lived to a good old age and died on the same day many years later. Strange to say, it was on a Fourth of July.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do you know about Thomas Jefferson?
2. Memorize a few sentences from the Declaration of Independence.
3. What did Franklin mean by the remark he made when he signed the Declaration of Independence?
4. Why did Hancock write his name in large letters?

Books You Will Like

Beard, C. A., and Bagley W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 137-141.

Morgan, James—*Our Presidents* (school edition), pp. 20-32.

Pratt, M. L.—*America's Story*, Bk. V, pp. 84-94.

BETSY ROSS AND THE STAR-SPANGLED BANNER

After the Declaration of Independence was signed, our leaders said, "The United States ought to have a flag of its own to carry at the head of its army." The men of the Continental Congress talked about a flag and then voted: "Resolved, that the flag of the United States shall be thirteen stripes, alternate red and white, and that the Union be thirteen white stars on a blue field."

A flag of this kind had to be made, for never before had there been one like it. To-day we should order a flag from a factory, but in those days women did most of the sewing by hand, for there were no sewing machines.

George Washington, Robert Morris, and George Ross were on the flag committee.

"Who can make this flag for us?" asked Washington.

"My nephew's wife, Betsy Ross, is a fine seamstress," said George Ross, "and she lives near by. Suppose we take our plans to her."

Betsy Ross thought it a great honor to make the first United States flag. Washington told her to make the stars with six points, but she said, "Sir, the

stars should have only five points." Taking her scissors, she folded some paper and quickly cut out a five-pointed star for him.

For many years Betsy Ross made all the government flags, and her daughter after her made many more flags. The stars and stripes were made in the Ross family for eighty years, and the home of Betsy Ross is now visited by many people.

To-day our flag has forty-eight stars. A new one has been put on the flag whenever we have added a new state to the Union. The thirteen stripes are still there, to stand for the first thirteen colonies. Perhaps you would like to learn the names of these colonies. They are: New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.

Would you like to know how our flag came to be called the Star-Spangled Banner?

In a later war with England a British ship was firing at a fort which protected the city of Baltimore. Francis Scott Key, a young lawyer from Washington, was sent under a white flag — so that the enemy would not shoot at him — with a message to the British ship. From this enemy ship he was forced to see the attack on the fort. As the sun went down, he saw the United

"SIR, THE STARS SHOULD HAVE ONLY FIVE POINTS."

States flag still flying over the fort. All night he tossed on his bed and wondered whether the fort could hold out or would be forced to surrender and take down the flag.

Very early in the morning, as soon as it was light, he looked out to see if our flag was still floating. There it was, its stars and stripes bravely waving. The fort was safe. His heart beat with joy when he knew that the British had failed to take Baltimore.

Key seized a piece of paper and wrote the beautiful words of the "Star-Spangled Banner." To this day we call our flag the Star-Spangled Banner. All school children know the salute to our flag, and every American is expected to protect it.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Who made our first flag?
2. How many stars and stripes did it have?
3. How many stars and stripes are on our flag to-day? What do they stand for?
4. How is the flag used?
5. How many of the thirteen original colonies can you name?
6. Repeat one stanza of "The Star-Spangled Banner."
7. Let the class give the salute to the flag.

FOUR BRAVE WOMEN OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR

Once during the Revolutionary War the British soldiers were on the way to New York from Philadelphia, and Washington's soldiers were close behind them. It was a long running fight. At Monmouth they stopped for a battle. The guns roared; smoke was everywhere; and dust and dirt almost smothered the soldiers. Our troops must have water.

Molly Hayes was the brave wife of one of the gunners who fired the cannon. She was a strong woman, who could carry a sack of meal up a flight of stairs. She said, "I will bring water from the spring at the foot of the hill."

Down the hill she fled, braving the shot and shell from the enemy's guns. Back and forth she went, bringing water for our thirsty gunners. Every time she came with her pitcher of water they called, "Hurrah for Molly Pitcher!" At last she returned to find her young husband lying wounded beside his gun. As she sat there holding his head in her lap, she heard the commander say: "Take this gun away. There is no one left to fire it."

Molly Pitcher sprang to her feet. "Stop," she

shouted, "that cannon must not leave the field. I will take my husband's place and fight for him."

She ran to the gun, put in the powder, and fired it as she had seen her husband do. As long as the battle lasted brave Molly Pitcher stood at the gun. Covered with dirt and smoke, she kept firing until the order came to stop.

General Washington wished to meet the brave woman who had taken charge of a cannon. He sent for her to come to his headquarters and praised her for her courage. He put a badge on her shoulder, and ever after she was known as Captain Molly Pitcher.

Nancy Hart of Georgia was a large woman. Many a day she did a man's work. She could fire a gun and fight the Indians if need be, for she had lived all her life in a cabin on the frontier, or unsettled part of the country.

One day during the Revolutionary War some British soldiers were riding through the South, destroying property. In Nancy's yard they saw turkeys. The soldiers bade her kill them for their dinner.

Nancy Hart set to work. But while the men were waiting for dinner, she secretly sent a messenger to some soldiers of the Colonial army who were not far away. Then when the British soldiers were eating, she quietly hid all their guns except one. This she took

AS LONG AS THE BATTLE LASTED MOLLY PITCHER STOOD AT THE GUN.

and, standing in the door, held them prisoners until our soldiers came galloping up and captured them.

Another brave heroine of the frontier was Elizabeth Zane. It was when the British were setting the Indians on the white settlers in Ohio that Fort Henry was built. It was named for Patrick Henry, and stood about where Wheeling, West Virginia, is to-day.

Samuel Girty was a miserable white man who had gone to live with the Indians when he was a boy. All the white people hated him, for they said that he was always ready to lead the Indians to fight the white settlers. Once he led them against Fort Henry. All the settlers about Fort Henry were gathered in the fort. They had refused to surrender to Girty, though they had only twenty men and boys to protect the women and children. Four hundred red men were battering with logs at the fort, trying to knock down the gates. The men within drove them back with their guns while the women melted pewter, or metal, plates into bullets. This went on day after day.

Then the time came when one of the men said: "The powder is about gone. What shall we do?"

"There is a keg of powder in my cabin," said Captain Zane. The cabin was in sight of the fort, but they knew that the man who went for it was likely to be shot by the Indians.

"I will go. I will go," said one man after the other.

But young Elizabeth Zane said, "None of the men can be spared; I must go." All cheered the brave girl.

Very quietly the gates of the fort were opened, and the Indians saw a young girl slip out as if she were going for a walk. She went boldly to the cabin and entered. The red men did not suspect what she was after until they saw her come out with the keg of powder in her arms. Swiftly she ran toward the fort, though a shower of bullets and arrows fell about her. Breathless, the people inside the walls watched her, praying that she might get back safely. At the gate she stumbled and fell, and they thought that she was shot; but almost at once she jumped up and ran through the open gate. The powder brave Betty Zane brought kept the fort safe until help arrived.

Lydia Darrah was a clever woman who lived in Philadelphia. There were many Tories there, or Americans who helped England. Often the British soldiers came to Lydia's house to sleep, for her husband was a Tory. One night several officers were having a meeting in her rooms upstairs. Lydia Darrah had gone to her own room and was supposed to be asleep. But she crept up softly, listened at the door, and heard the British plan to take Washington's army the next night. She could not tell her husband what she had heard; but the next morning, as soon as she had given the officers a fine breakfast, she slipped

out of the house, saying that she had a sack of grain which must be ground at the mill.

Hastily she walked many miles to seek someone who would take the message safely. At last she found a lad who could be trusted, and very shortly he was on his way to warn Washington of his danger.

When Washington's army slipped away that night, the British officers were amazed. They said no one could have heard their plans, for they had been safe in the house of Tory friends and the people of the house had been sound asleep.

There were many other brave women of the Revolutionary War, whose stories have never been told. Wherever a soldier went forth to fight, some brave woman cared for the family and did his work at home.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Dramatize the story of Molly Pitcher on the battlefield.
2. If you can, tell of a braver act than that of Nancy Hart.
3. Draw a picture showing Betty Zane bringing the powder to the fort.
4. Do you think that it was right for Lydia Darrah to favor the side seeking independence when her husband favored the British side?

A Book You Will Like

Humphrey, Grace—*Women in History.*

GENERAL MARION, THE SWAMP FOX

You have probably read about Robin Hood and his merry men, who hid in the forest and kept the nobles of England in terror. During the Revolutionary War there was a brave little general in South Carolina who fought the Tories and the British army. His men, like Robin Hood's, hid in the forests and swamps and often dashed out to surprise the enemy. His name was Francis Marion, and he was called the "Swamp Fox."

General Marion was small, thin, and dark. His men had no money to buy uniforms. They had only their own poor guns, while their swords were pounded out of saws and their bullets were made from melted pewter plates. Some of his little army were negroes; all, both negroes and white men, were brave and true patriots.

Marion knew the swamps and woods of the country, and there he hid his men. The British soldiers were afraid to go after them. In the swamps there were quicksands, which would swallow up a horse and his rider. There were also many mosquitoes and snakes, and there was very little to eat. But Marion and his men knew how to get food. They shot game and fished; and when they helped themselves to grain for

their horses from the near-by farms, no one found fault with them.

Once Marion and his men were camped on an island in a river, with only a narrow neck of sand leading to their hiding place. Some of the men had gone forth at night and captured British soldiers. A British officer was sent to Marion to arrange about exchanging prisoners. Marion ordered the officer to be blindfolded and led to the hiding place.

When the bandage was taken from his eyes, the British officer found Marion's men camped in dense woods. They were sleeping on the ground, and they had no uniforms or tents. He was greatly surprised when he saw the mild and gentle Marion, whom everyone called the "terrible Swamp Fox."

Marion was very polite to his guest and invited him to stay to dinner. "I shall be pleased to have you as my guest, for you have come a long way," he said.

The British officer, who was hungry, gladly accepted the invitation. They sat down upon two logs, and Marion told the cook to serve the meal. The cook brought in only some roasted sweet potatoes on pieces of bark.

"Surely you have more food than this," said the surprised guest. "This cannot be what you have every day."

"Yes, indeed," said Marion. "Only to-day, we have a guest, and there is a little more than usual."

THE BRITISH OFFICER FOUND MARION AND HIS MEN CAMPING IN THE WOODS.

"We can never conquer such men as these," said the officer when he returned to his camp.

As the British army marched through the South, Marion's men were on their trail. If any of the redcoats left the camp, Marion snatched them up and made them prisoners. Once, it is said, Marion galloped into the village where the British army was camped and carried off their commander.

One day one of Marion's scouts came back to their hiding place and said that there were one hundred fifty American prisoners coming down the river, in charge of a few British soldiers.

"Forward, march!" called Marion, and away they galloped to a narrow pass through which, Marion knew, the enemy must go. Hiding here, they surprised the British and rescued the prisoners.

Marion hated the Tories because, though they lived in America, they fought for England. Whenever there was a Tory meeting, he broke it up if he could. One day he was alone, chasing a Tory, when he saw a band of Tories coming to save their friend. Marion pretended that he had a whole band of his own men hidden in the woods and called out loudly: "Here they are. Come on, boys." The Tories, thinking it was a real army, retreated as fast as they could.

Marion's men stayed with him because they liked him. There was nothing to keep them from deserting

at any time. Once Marion was discouraged and said: "I may be forced to retreat to the mountains. How many of you will stand by me until the British withdraw from our country?"

"Every man will stand by you till death," cried the soldiers.

Once General Lee asked Marion to help his soldiers take a British fort that was built on a hill high above their camp. Marion's men slipped away into the forest. They cut logs and fitted them together. The next night they brought the logs out and built a tower as high as the fort. In the morning the soldiers in the fort looked into a wooden tower which was so high that the men in it could shoot down on them. There were soldiers on top, too, and many more at the bottom. The British had to surrender.

Marion's men, by their raids, helped drive the British army from the South and encouraged the other American soldiers. No man was a truer patriot than General Francis Marion, the Swamp Fox.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was Marion called the Swamp Fox? Was it a good name for him?

2. Why did the British visitor say that men like Marion could not be conquered?

3. Why did not Marion's army march out and fight the British openly?

4. Explain the use of the tower which Marion's men made.
5. Find South Carolina on a map.

A Book You Will Like

Dickson, M. S.—*Pioneers and Patriots in American History*, pp. 64-78.

LAFAYETTE, OUR FRIEND FROM FRANCE

Lafayette was a rich French marquis, or nobleman. When he was only fifteen years old, he was a page at the royal court. One day, when he was still a young man, he heard some Englishmen talking of the colonies in America. They said, "The colonies have declared themselves free from England."

Lafayette was much interested and said, "I think those people should have their liberty, and I should like to go and help them get it."

Later he heard of Washington's daring victory when he crossed the Delaware River in the storm, and again he said: "Those are the bravest people I ever knew! I shall go to Paris and offer myself to their agent, Benjamin Franklin. Then I myself shall go to America."

When Lafayette told Franklin what he wished to do, Franklin said: "Marquis de Lafayette, you are most kind. The colonies will be very glad of your help, but I have no ships in which to send you. I do not see how you can go unless you are able to furnish your own ships."

As France was then at peace with England, Lafayette dared not tell the King of France that he was going to

help enemies of England. His relatives and friends begged Lafayette not to do such a rash thing as to go to America and fight against England; but he quietly fitted up a ship, paid for it, and secretly got ready to sail for America. While Lafayette was on the way to the coast to board his ship, the King learned of his plans. He gave orders to have Lafayette arrested and brought to Paris.

But when Lafayette was being brought back by the King's men, he disguised himself as a negro servant, with a curly wig and a blackened face. In this way he slipped past the guards and escaped to Spain. In a few weeks he was on his ship, ready to start. When he told the captain of the ship to head for America, the man was frightened and said, "I dare not do that, for the English will capture us."

"Do as I tell you or I will put you in irons," said Lafayette. "This is my ship, and it shall go where I direct."

The captain turned his ship toward America. After a long, stormy voyage they arrived. Washington's poor soldiers were tired and discouraged; but when they heard that Lafayette and his men had come to help them fight their battles, there was great joy.

Lafayette first met General Washington at a dinner. Washington, who admired Lafayette's bravery, said: "Sir, I thank you for the sacrifice you are making for

America. I shall be glad to make you at once a member of my military family."

Lafayette looked up at the great George Washington, who was old enough to be his father, and replied with many French gestures, "I have come to America to fight and not to seek honors." Ever after this Washington and Lafayette were the best of friends.

Lafayette not only fought bravely in many battles of the war, but he went back to France to raise sums of money and to interest the King of France in the colonies. The King was now ready to help America. Someone said, "I believe the King would even take the furniture from his palace for the colonists if Lafayette asked him to do so."

As soon as he could, Lafayette returned to America. Near the close of the war Washington sent him with a small army to keep the British general Cornwallis busy until more troops could arrive. Lafayette teased Cornwallis by marching here and there, but he avoided a battle. Cornwallis was sure that he could capture Lafayette. "That boy cannot escape me," he said again and again. But "that boy" did.

At last Cornwallis led his army to Yorktown, to be near the sea, and built works to protect it. But here he was trapped. French soldiers arrived by sea, and Washington secretly marched his army south to join Lafayette. The French fleet blocked the river so that Cornwallis could not escape by water. Soon Washing-

LAFAYETTE FIRST MET GENERAL WASHINGTON AT A DINNER.

ton and his army surrounded the British general at Yorktown and forced the British army to surrender. This was the end of the war. The colonies had won their freedom. Lafayette was praised by Washington for his brave part in the victory.

Many years afterward, when Lafayette was an old man, he came to America on a visit with his son, George Washington Lafayette. Most of the officers Lafayette had known were gone, and he found here a great change. Instead of a group of poor fighting colonies, he saw a splendid nation of twelve million people. Many citizens went out to his ship, with flags flying, to meet him. All cried: "Welcome, Lafayette. All honor to the nation's guest."

This was before the day of railroads, and the aged visitor traveled many miles by boat, or in a carriage drawn by four white horses. He visited New England and the South and even went as far west as St. Louis. Everywhere the people honored him.

Lafayette visited the home of his old friend George Washington at Mount Vernon. He went through the rooms and over the grounds and spent some time at the tomb where lay the body of his friend, who had died twenty-five years before. Tears were in his eyes when he came away.

Lafayette had a grand farewell dinner at the White House with the President, John Quincy Adams, and then sailed away to France.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why did Lafayette wish to aid America in its war for freedom?

2. Why did his King try to prevent him from coming to the United States?

3. Draw a picture showing Lafayette disguised as a negro.

4. Do you think that it was right for Lafayette to make his captain sail for America?

5. How did the United States show honor to Lafayette?

6. Find a picture of Lafayette.

Books You Will Like

Crow, M. F.—*Lafayette.*

Dickson, M. S.—*Pioneers and Patriots in American History*, pp. 99-118.

Elson, H. W.—*Side Lights on American History* (revised edition), Bk. I, pp. 166-169.

Olcott, F. J.—*Good Stories for Great Birthdays*, pp. 410-424.

SHARP AND WILBERFORCE FIGHT SLAVERY

One day in 1772 Granville Sharp was walking along a street in London. He came upon a poor negro lying in the street, who was ill and dying. Sharp had him taken to a hospital and cared for.

Upon hearing the negro's story, Sharp found that he was a slave named Somerset and that his cruel master, finding him unable to work, had turned him out into the street to starve and die. Sharp took care of the negro till he was well and then found a place where he could earn a living.

Two years later Somerset met his old master in the street. The cruel man knew his servant and tried to have him put in prison as a runaway slave.

"No," said Sharp, "that you shall not do. You turned him into the street to die when he was ill, and now you have no claim on him."

"But I have a claim," replied the cruel man. "He is my property, and no one has any more right to take him from me than to take my coat or my hat. I had a right to turn him into the street if I pleased; I have a right to take him back."

But Sharp would not agree with him, and the question was taken to a judge. The judge said that Somerset was free, that no man could be held as a slave in England, and that a slave became free the moment he set foot on England's shores.

That settled the question of slavery in England, but large numbers of slaves were still held by Englishmen in her colonies. In the West Indies there were great sugar plantations, or farms, where all the work was done by slaves. Indeed English shipowners got rich by capturing negroes in Africa, carrying them across the Atlantic, and selling them as slaves in the West Indies and in America.

After the slave dealers had hunted the negroes down in the forests of Africa, they chained them together in gangs and dragged them to the sea. Those black men who were too old and feeble to work were put to death at once or left to die of hunger or to be killed by wild beasts.

The negroes were packed closely together on the ships so that each vessel could carry as many as possible. The decks were so low that the black men could only lie or sit, with scarcely room enough to turn. In this fearful, crowded manner they were carried across the hot belt to America, and many of the poor creatures died on the way. Each morning the crew looked over the black passengers and flung the dead overboard. Yet the shipowners made so much money out of this

dreadful trade that at one time about two hundred English vessels were busy carrying slaves.

About this time, in 1780, William Wilberforce, who lived in England, began to fight hotly against this cruel slave trade. He went up and down the country telling of the wicked deeds of the slave traders. William Pitt, an English leader, said that Wilberforce was right. The Quakers came to his side, too. But the merchants who owned the ships were filling their pockets and refused to give up the cruel trade. For years Wilberforce worked and talked and wrote to arouse the people of England. The merchants called Wilberforce all sorts of names and threatened him, but he kept on working because he knew that he was right.

Year after year he tried to have a law made to end the slave trade, but each time he was beaten. At last in 1807 the law was made, ordering that there should be no more slave trade in British territory.

But the trade was carried on secretly, and slaves were smuggled on board the ships. England sent her warships to chase and catch the slave ships; but some of them got away in safety with their loads of slaves.

Wilberforce worked on, for he saw that the trade would not stop till England set free all the slaves in her colonies. Of course the slave owners objected. They had bought their slaves and needed them to do their work. At last in 1833 England made a law set-

WILBERFORCE TRIED TO HAVE A LAW MADE TO END THE SLAVE TRADE.

ting free all the slaves in her colonies and agreeing to pay their masters nearly a hundred million dollars for their loss.

All slaves were to be freed on August 1, 1834. As midnight of July 31 approached, the slaves gathered in their churches. When the hour struck, they showed great joy. They shook hands again and again with their former owners and said that as free men they would work twice as hard as they had done when they were slaves.

Wilberforce did not live to see this hour. He died three days before the law was passed, but he knew that he had won. "Thank God," he said, "that I have lived to see the day in which England is willing to give twenty million pounds (about a hundred million dollars) to set the slaves free."

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Do you think all masters were cruel to their slaves?
2. What do we mean when we say that England had colonies in the West Indies?

STEPHENSON, THE FATHER OF RAILWAYS

George Stephenson was born in a poor home in England in 1781. His parents lived in a wretched cottage with a dirt floor. When George was eight, he went out to work, herding cows for four cents a day. George's father was fireman for an engine that pumped water out of a coal mine, and George had a great wish to be a fireman, too. He loved to watch his father keep a good fire under the boiler. One day George made a tiny engine of clay.

At the age of fifteen George was allowed to assist his father at the engine, and he was overjoyed. His wages were about twenty cents a day. He thought that he was doing well, and he took good care of his engine. A short time later his wages were doubled. When he received his first week's pay of three dollars, he ran joyfully out of the pay office shouting, "I am now a made man for life!" When he was seventeen, he was promoted over his father and given full charge of the engine.

George wished to learn more about steam engines, but he could neither read nor write, for he had never been to school a day in his life. He therefore went to night school, paying two cents a night, and was soon able to read, write, and do examples in arithmetic.

People said that George could do anything with an engine. When one broke down, they always sent for him to repair it, and he never failed.

At this time there were no railroads or locomotives. There were only two ways of traveling in England: by horse and wagon along the roads or by slow barges on the canals. A man named Outram (o͞o′trăm) said that wagons would carry big loads more easily if tracks were laid for the wheels to run on. The first tracks were of wood, but later they were made of iron. It was found that a horse could draw much bigger loads over these smooth tracks than on the dirt roads, although there was not much gain in speed. These roads were called *tramways*.

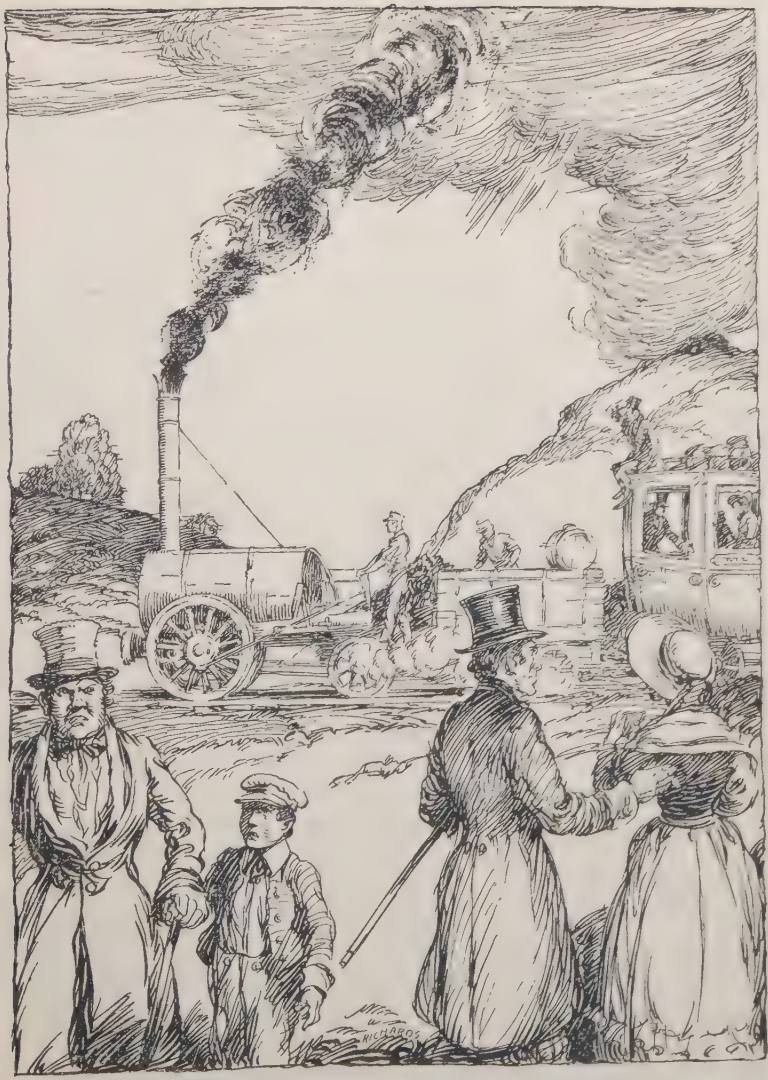
There were then plenty of steam engines in England used for pumping and for pulling coal cars out of the mines by winding up long ropes or cables attached to the cars. No one had thought of putting an engine on wheels and making it run the wheels. But now men began to talk of using a steam engine, instead of a horse and wagon, to run on these iron tracks, or tramways.

George Stephenson thought over this problem a great deal. At last he heard that such an engine, called Black Billy, had been built. It ran over a tram road not far away. George went to see it, and after looking it over carefully he said, "I can make a better one than that."

Before a year had passed, Stephenson built a "traveling" engine, which pulled a train of loaded cars at a speed of four miles an hour. Then he built a still better engine, which he called Puffing Billy. It went no faster than five or six miles an hour, but everyone thought it was wonderful. These slow locomotives were used for drawing freight cars only.

Now the merchants wanted a railway built from Liverpool to Manchester to carry more quickly the big bales of cotton for the mills to weave into cloth. They thought that the canal was too slow. People said that George Stephenson was the only man who could build such a railroad. Stephenson undertook the task, and it was a big one for those early days. The line had to go across a vast swamp, but people did not know how to make a solid railway track there. Stephenson filled in the swamp with stones until he had a solid roadbed. Then he tunneled under the city of Liverpool, a mile through solid rock. There were sixty-three bridges to be built, but Stephenson did not hesitate. At last the railroad was done. It was the greatest work of his life.

A prize of two thousand dollars was then offered for the best engine to draw a train on this new road. The engine must run at a speed of at least ten miles an hour. Stephenson talked this problem over with his son Robert, who was a clever young engineer. They decided to build a locomotive. When it was built, it



EVERYBODY CAME TO SEE STEPHENSON'S ROCKET AND TO RIDE AT THE TERRIBLE SPEED OF THIRTY MILES AN HOUR.

was named the Rocket. They put it on the track, and George Stephenson drove it along at a speed of nearly thirty miles an hour. Everyone was amazed. The Rocket easily beat all the other engines.

Everybody came to see the iron horse and to get the thrill of riding on a railroad at the terrible speed of thirty miles an hour. Not only did the railroad carry all kinds of goods quickly from city to city, but it began to carry people. Many men and women of England had never been far from their homes. Soon they were traveling all over England. Even the children were allowed to go sight-seeing.

The locomotive was a wonderful invention, and we have reason to remember George Stephenson, who, by working hard and using his head, became one of the great men of history.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did George Stephenson manage to get on from a poor start when others around him did not?
2. Which had a better chance for an education, George or you?
3. Why do you think George learned so fast?
4. How are railroads better than canals for carrying goods? Are canals ever better?
5. Which do you think has helped man more, the printing press or the locomotive? Give the reason for your answer.

A Book You Will Like

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Makers of Progress*, pp. 33–40.

DANIEL BOONE, THE GREAT HUNTER

Daniel Boone was a Quaker. He was also a famous hunter in the days when a hunter was one of the most useful of men. He learned to shoot a gun when he was a very small boy. His mother said that she was never in need of meat when Daniel was at home. One day he ran away from home. His father found him living in a cave in the woods, where he was making a collection of skins to sell in the spring. The woods were full of deer and other animals then, and people shot them for food and for their skins.

The first settlers in America had stayed along the coast. What was beyond the mountains to the west most of them did not know. But the Indians crossed the mountains, following the tracks of the deer and the buffalo. Soon some of the white hunters and trappers went too. The hunters wanted deerskins, and deer were becoming fewer near the settlements. The trappers were after beaver skins, and the beaver makes his dam along lonely streams. Across the sea the beaver's soft fur was used for hats, and the skins were worth a dollar apiece. This was a great deal of money in those days. In America deerskins were often used for clothing, and they also brought a good price.

One day Daniel met a hunter who had been over the mountains to the west. This hunter told him about the many wild animals that were over there.

Daniel Boone was one of the first white hunters to cross the mountains. There, among the beautiful hills and valleys of Kentucky, he found plenty of game.

The Indians did not like the white hunters. One day Daniel was chased by the red men and had to jump into a river. He swam to the bank and hid under some bushes until the Indians were gone.

Once, when he was on his way home with a big load of skins packed on the back of his horse, a band of Indians captured him and robbed him of them all. Daniel did not complain; he went back to get more skins.

Daniel Boone lived in the wilderness a year at a time. When his shoes wore out, he made moccasins of deerskin. He wore a deerskin coat and a coonskin cap, with the tail hanging down behind.

At last Daniel brought his family and some other people to the wilderness of Kentucky. They made a settlement called Boonesboro.

Boone built a cabin with a stone fireplace in one end, where his wife could cook the meat of the animals he killed. For many months they lived on meat alone, for they could not have bread until they raised a crop of corn. How would you like to eat turkey instead of bread and bear's grease instead of butter?

Daniel made a table of wood and a bed of poles

DANIEL BOONE MADE A TABLE OF WOOD.

fastened to the wall. In the spring their corn grew up between the stumps of the trees, and the children stood guard to drive the crows away from it. The day the first roasting ears were ripe they had a feast.

Mrs. Boone made their clothing from skins, or if she had no skins, she wove nettles into cloth.

More white people came. Their greatest need was salt. Daniel knew a place along the river called a *salt lick*. Here the wild animals came to lick the salt from the rocks. "We will take our big kettles down there and boil some water until only the salt is left in the bottom of the kettles," said the men. It took a good many days to do this work.

While they were busy some Indians came along. They were riding to the Ohio River, where they were going to cross in canoes to their Indian village. They took the white men prisoners and said, "You must go with us."

Daniel Boone was not afraid of the Indians, but he did not want them to find his settlement. He said to the other white men, "Let us go quietly." They stayed several weeks in the Indian camp, sleeping on the ground and eating dirty corn and beans from the Indian kettles with their hands, as the Indians did. The Chief liked Boone because he could play all their games and was a fine shot. He freed the other men, but he made Daniel stay and be his adopted son.

But one day, while the Indians were hunting, Boone

slipped away on a horse. He hid in the woods in the daytime and traveled only at night. He dared not cook a meal, for he was afraid that the Indians would see the smoke of his fire.

When Boone reached home, he found the women and children safe, but he knew that the Indians would soon follow. He therefore got the boys and men together and brought all the families inside the fort which had been built in the settlement.

Soon the Indians appeared in their war paint, and there was a long battle. The red men shot burning arrows on to the roof of the fort, but a rain came and put out the fire. At night one of the white men would slip out of the fort and bring in a deer for food.

Once Daniel Boone went out to talk to the Indians and was shot. Other men carried him back to the fort and bound up his wounds. He was still able to tell them how to fight off the savages.

One morning they awoke and found, to their great joy, that the red men were gone. The settlement was saved.

After the Revolutionary War many white people came over the mountains, and Kentucky became a state. Daniel Boome did not like to have many people near by. He therefore moved on to the wilderness beyond the Mississippi River. He made his home in what is now the state of Missouri. There he lived and hunted until he was over eighty years old.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How would you like the food of the pioneers, or people who lived on the frontier?

2. What would you like about the life of a trapper? Is there anything that you would dislike?

3. Why did hunters look for deer and beaver?

4. Draw a picture showing Boone in the wilderness.

5. How did the settlers in Boonesboro get salt?

6. Prove that Boone knew how to deal with the Indians.

7. Would you rather have lived at Boonesboro or at Plymouth? Why?

Books You Will Like

Bruce, H. A.—*Daniel Boone and the Wilderness Road.*

Dickson, M. S.—*Pioneers and Patriots in American History*, pp. 79-98.

Gulliver, Lucile—*Daniel Boone.*

McMurry, C. A. — *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, pp. 69-85.

Nida, S. H.—*Letters of Polly the Pioneer*, pp. 69-74.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, WINNER OF THE NORTHWEST

George Rogers Clark, like Daniel Boone, loved to hunt in the wilderness. He was only twenty-one when he crossed the mountains to join the settlers in Kentucky.

When the Revolutionary War was going on, Hamilton, the English general at Detroit, aroused the Indians to kill the American settlers west of the mountains. He gave the Indians scalping knives and paid them for all the white scalps they brought in. The Indians called him the "hair-buyer" general. They were very glad to do what he asked them to do.

Soon Indians everywhere were on the warpath, murdering women and children, as well as men, for their scalps. Many settlements in the West were destroyed, and all the settlers were full of fear.

George Rogers Clark raged at this cruelty. "This is not war; it is murder," he cried.

He sent two of his men across the Ohio River to find out where the English forts were and whether they could be taken. The scouts found that there were only a few soldiers in each fort. Clark planned to capture these forts. He went back to Virginia on foot

to see Patrick Henry, who was Governor, and Thomas Jefferson, who had been a playmate of his when they were boys.

"That is a wonderful country beyond the mountains," said Clark. "The United States must have it, and we must capture it now. Give me powder and guns, and I will get men, take the forts, and save the land for the colonists."

Governor Henry secretly helped him get the things he needed, and Clark took his men and war supplies down the Ohio River, with the Indians watching on the banks.

Clark chose to take with him about two hundred men. They were dressed in skins and wore coonskin caps. They were used to this wild country and the crafty Indians. The little army floated on down the Ohio River, landed in Illinois, and marched across the country to surprise the British fort at Kaskaskia.

When they approached the fort and town, they hid in a clump of trees near by for a whole day. After dark half the men surrounded the village, and Clark led the other half into the fort, where the people were having a dance by torchlight. All the women of the fort and many Indians were there.

Suddenly an Indian saw Clark and gave a shout. The people stopped dancing and looked on in great fear. Clark said to the people: "Go on with your fun, but remember I have taken this fort, and you are now

KASKASKIA WAS TAKEN WITHOUT THE LOSS OF A SINGLE SOLDIER.

dancing under the American flag instead of the British. When you have finished, my men will take the officers prisoners. The other people may go to their homes. If any of you leave your houses to-night, it will be under pain of death. My men will guard the town." In this way Kaskaskia was taken without the loss of a single soldier.

An Indian runner was sent to warn the "hair-buyer" general at Detroit that Clark was marching against his forts. When Hamilton heard this, he hastened across the country and down a branch of the Wabash River, to a fort at Vincennes, with five hundred English and Indians. The snow had melted, and the river was flooding the land on both banks. Hamilton said, "No one can reach Vincennes while the ground is flooded this way;" so he ordered most of his soldiers back to Detroit.

When Clark learned of this, he started at once for Vincennes through the melting ice and snow. It was like crossing a vast lake. His men hesitated, but Clark plunged into the water. He pushed along, feeling his way with his feet. On the shoulders of one man rode a little drummer boy. He beat his drum loudly, and the men followed. In some places they went through water up to their necks. When a man was tired out, the others carried him until they reached land, where they could have fire and food. Here they ate venison or ducks which they had shot. When they had rested, they called, "Keep your powder dry,"

held their guns over their heads, and walked right into the ice-cold water again.

It took four days to march the last nine miles through

THE FIVE STATES WHICH WERE MADE FROM THE NORTHWEST TERRITORY.

the water. When they came near the fort, they met a Frenchman who was out hunting ducks.

"Does Hamilton know that we are coming?" they asked.

"No," said the Frenchman.

Clark sent him ahead to the town with a note saying: "Let all who wish to enjoy the liberty I bring you remain in your houses. The others may join the 'hair-buyer' general in the fort."

When Clark reached the town, he found that most of the Indians had fled to the woods, and that the French people who lived there were in their houses. At once he attacked the English soldiers in the fort. They fought boldly, but Clark soon captured the fort and took them prisoners.

After the Revolutionary War was over, five large states were made from this country north of the Ohio River that Clark had taken so bravely. Perhaps you know someone who has lived in Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, or Wisconsin. Or perhaps you have visited or lived in these states and know what a splendid country Clark and his fearless soldiers saved for the United States.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What kind of general was Hamilton?

2. Why did Clark lead his small army into the territory north of the Ohio River?

3. Why did Clark wait for darkness before attacking Kaskaskia?

4. What kind of general do you think Clark made?

5. How did Clark feed his army?

6. Draw a picture showing Clark and his soldiers wading through the water.

Books You Will Like

Bird, G. E., and Starling, Maud—*Historical Plays for Children*, pp. 54-78.

McMurry, C. A. — *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, pp. 124-149.

Nida, S. H.—*Letters of Polly the Pioneer*, pp. 25-47.

ANDREW JACKSON, "OLD HICKORY"

Andrew Jackson was a rough old hero, but he was a great favorite with old and young. He was very strong and could endure so much that he was called Old Hickory. Andrew was born in South Carolina. He never had an easy life. His father died before he was born, and his mother had to keep house for her sister in order to get a home for her three boys.

Andrew was tall, red-headed, freckled, and as brave as a lion. He was only thirteen when the British redcoats came to fight in the South. Andrew's eldest brother was killed in the war, and he and his mother and another brother were driven out of their poor home.

One day when Andrew and his brother were at a cousin's home, some British soldiers came in, broke the dishes, tore open the feather beds, and insulted the women and children. They then took the two boys to their camp as prisoners.

A young British officer ordered Andrew to clean his boots. Andrew refused, saying, "Sir, I am a prisoner of war, but not your servant." The angry soldier struck him with his sword, and all his life Andrew bore the scars of the wounds on his face and hands.

The boys were taken to a prison pen where they were treated like cattle. One day Andrew watched a battle through a hole that he whittled in a board of the pen.

At last his mother rescued them, sick and wounded, but the poor brother died. Then the mother went to nurse the wounded soldiers, where she also died. Andrew was now left all alone, with bitter hatred for the British and deep love for his fearless mother. All his life he gave her credit for the good and brave things he did, saying, "This I learned from my good old mother."

Though Andrew had very little chance to go to school himself, he taught in some of the frontier schools to get money so that he could learn to be a lawyer. He left his home in North Carolina and went to live in Tennessee, where he was a traveling lawyer who settled disputes in the wilderness.

All the wild sports of the wilderness he loved. He could shoot, box, ride race horses, and hold his own with his rough mates. He became a great leader.

Someone was needed to fight the Creek Indians. They had killed four or five hundred white people in the South. Andrew Jackson got up from a sick bed, with his arm in a sling, and took a party of white men out against the Indians.

It was a hard trip through swamps and forest, and his men did not have enough food. "We are going home," said the soldiers.

"I WILL SHOOT THE FIRST MAN THAT MOVES," SAID JACKSON.

Jackson said, "No, we must finish the work we have come to do." He rode out before them with a gun in his good hand and said: "You must stay with me. I will shoot the first man that moves." The men all stayed, and the Indians were driven away from the white settlements.

Andrew Jackson was called a "man of the people," which means that the rough citizens of the wilderness loved him. Sometimes he settled other disputes for them besides law disputes. One day, when a number of men were at dinner, some of them began to quarrel. Jackson, I am sorry to say, jumped up on the table and walked down to them right over the dishes. He put his hand in his pocket, and they heard something click. The men thought it was a gun. "Don't shoot, Mr. Jackson," they called and ran from the room. Jackson laughed, for they had heard only the lid of the box which held his tobacco.

In the greatest land victory of our second war with England, Jackson and his four thousand untrained men defeated over five thousand trained British soldiers. He also fought and conquered the Indians in Florida. Some of you may have been in Jacksonville, Florida, which is named for him.

Old Hickory was elected President of the United States when he was over sixty years of age. Jackson hated his enemies, and when he became President, he took their offices away from the people who had voted

against him and gave the places to his friends. To his death he was a great fighter for any cause in which he believed.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why do you think the people loved Jackson?
2. What kind of woman was Jackson's mother?
3. Do you know anybody who is like Jackson?
4. Do you think it was a good plan for Jackson to put out of office people who had voted against him?

A Book You Will Like

Morgan, James—*Our Presidents* (school edition), pp. 57-72.

NAPOLEON, THE MAN BORN TO RULE

Some men have great power with which they could do much good, but they often use it all for themselves and throw away their chance to help others. Such a man was Napoleon, one of the greatest of generals.

Napoleon was not born in France, but at ten years of age he was sent from his island home to a school in France. When he went to school, he was small and poorly dressed, and his classmates made fun of him. They laughed at his family and his clothes. But Napoleon said to himself, "My time will come if I work"; and it did.

The lad was a good leader, even though he had few friends. One day, when a deep snow fell, Napoleon led some boys to build a huge snow fort, where they played war. Napoleon led those who attacked the fort. Another boy army defended the fort with snowballs. Napoleon had his army put stones in their snowballs. Then the others did the same thing, and it was a fierce battle. Many of the boys were injured by the stones.

One of Napoleon's boy soldiers disobeyed orders, and Napoleon knocked him down with a weighted snowball, which gave him a bad cut on his forehead. Many

years later, when Napoleon was Emperor, a strange man came before him asking a favor, which the Emperor refused. Then the stranger pushed back his hair, showing the scar on his forehead made by the snowball. The Emperor smiled and granted his wish.

When Napoleon was a general, his soldiers loved him, and he won many battles for France. His name was on every tongue. At last so many honors were heaped upon him that he was able to make himself Emperor of the French.

For twenty years he fought against the other nations of Europe. He said that Europe needed one ruler, and he forced nearly every nation except Russia and England to bow before him.

When he led his great army of four hundred thousand men against Russia, he was sure of victory. But the Russians refused to fight. They retreated into the heart of their vast land and coaxed Napoleon after them. It was winter and bitter cold. The Russians burned all the supplies Napoleon needed, and soon cold and famine defeated Napoleon's big army. It was his first great defeat. Only twenty thousand French soldiers ever got back home. The rest were buried in the snows of Russia.

But Napoleon soon raised another army. It was England that stood most in Napoleon's way now. He wanted to take his army to England and conquer the island, but he could not get across the narrow sea.

IN 1804 NAPOLEON CROWNED HIMSELF EMPEROR OF FRANCE.

England's warships, which were the most powerful on the ocean, prevented him from doing so. Every time Napoleon offered battle on the sea his ships were beaten.

Now it happened that France owned a big tract, or piece, of land in America. Louisiana, as the land from the Mississippi River west to the Rocky Mountains was called, then belonged to France. Napoleon feared that England's warships would go to America and take Louisiana from him, so he quickly sold it to the United States. That was a lucky day for us, for out of these wide lands we have made many big states.

Napoleon seemed not to know where to stop in his reaching out for power. At last England and Prussia, which is part of Germany, defeated Napoleon's army at Waterloo in 1815. Napoleon was taken prisoner, and because his enemies feared to leave him in Europe, he was sent far away to a lonely island called St. Helena. Here soldiers kept him under strict guard until he died, six years later. He was at first buried on the island, but twenty years afterward his body was carried back to France and placed in a magnificent tomb.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Do you think Napoleon should have allowed the boys on his side to put stones in their snowballs? Why?
2. Why did Napoleon fail to defeat Russia?

3. How was England saved from Napoleon's army?

4. Why did Napoleon sell the Louisiana territory to the United States?

5. Find the Louisiana territory on the map (p. 253) and tell what states have been made from it.

6. Would you call Napoleon a great man? Why?

Books You Will Like

Tappan, E. M.—*European Hero Stories*, pp. 226-233.

Van Loon, H. W.—*The Story of Mankind* (school edition), pp. 340-351.

Wells, H. G., and Carter, E. H.—*A Short History of Mankind*, pp. 174-177.

LEWIS AND CLARK, THE EXPLORERS

I

When Thomas Jefferson became President, the United States was not half so big as it is now, for it reached only to the Mississippi River. France then owned the mouth of the Mississippi and kept our boats from passing through it. Some Americans were sent to France to buy a piece of land east of the Mississippi so that our boats could go in and out of the river. And, as you have just learned, they also bought a very large tract of land west of the river, reaching to the Rocky Mountains.

Few white people had seen the Louisiana territory. Indian tribes lived there; herds of buffaloes roamed about; and a few hunters or trappers paddled up its rivers to get furs in the mountains.

When Louisiana territory became part of the United States, Jefferson wanted to know what the country was like and whether it was a fit place for white people. He sent a party to explore the land and make a report to him about it. He wanted to know about the Indians they met, the plants and animals there, and the mountains and the soil.

Jefferson had a young secretary whom he much admired. He said, "Meriwether Lewis is honest, exact, truthful, and a man of firmness, courage, and perseverance. I shall send him. With him must go a soldier, a man who knows how to fight the Indians. I will choose William Clark. He is a brother of George Rogers Clark and has lived in the wilderness many years."

Lewis and Clark collected and drilled a band of men at St. Louis to be ready to start west in the spring, as soon as the ice was out of the Missouri River.

Their boat was rowed along by twenty oarsmen and also had a square sail. "Look out for that log," called the captain as a tree came floating down the river. Often they were stuck on sand bars. Besides the big boat there were two small boats, and on the bank were led the horses of the men who hunted food for the party. The hunting party went ahead of the boats and made a camp where the boatmen could land. There they dressed deer and other game and hung them from trees, to be ready when the cooks arrived.

These hunters knew how to find plenty of goats, wild turkeys, and antelopes. The antelopes were keen of scent and very swift runners. A hunter shot them by hiding in the grass, putting his hat on a long stick, and then lifting it into sight. As the antelopes were curious animals, they soon came near enough to be shot.

In the hot July weather the men grew ill. The water was bad, and the mosquitoes were very troublesome. Many of the men were bitten by snakes, but Lewis and Clark were good doctors and saved all but one.

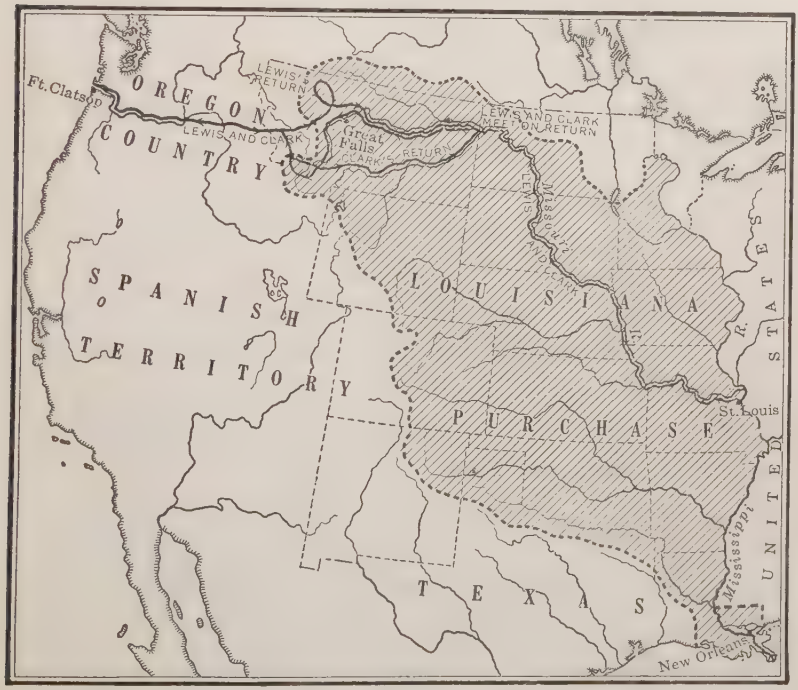
One day they had a meeting with some Indians. The white men sent the red men a present of pork, flour, and meal, and the Indians sent back watermelons. Then six chiefs appeared. Captain Lewis said: "The United States now owns this land. Your Great Father, the President of the United States, sends you greetings and good wishes and will protect you."

The chiefs said, "We are glad to belong to the United States, but we should like guns and powder that we may kill deer and fight our enemies." Instead of powder, they were given bright paint, a United States flag, and some gay clothes.

The white party moved on up the Missouri, but they could not find other Indian tribes. The hunters told them to set fire to the woods and the red men would appear. They did so, and five Sioux (s$\overline{oo}$) chiefs and seventy braves rode up on the other bank of the river.

Lewis and Clark sent over a boat with tobacco and four kettles to please the red men. The Sioux were a warlike tribe that lived in large tents made of buffalo skins painted red and white. They dressed in blankets, wore much paint on their faces, and had necklaces of

bears' claws about their necks. They were given presents of knives, bells, and clothes. The Indians called Captain Clark Red Head because he had red



THE LONG JOURNEY OF LEWIS AND CLARK ACROSS THE HIGH ROCKIES.

hair. Clark had to show them that the white men would fight if the Indians did not treat them well.

The party came upon herds of buffaloes grazing on the prairies. There were a great many prairie dogs sitting like squirrels beside their holes in the ground.

It was hard to get one of them, however, for they dodged into their holes quickly when the men came near them.

When winter came, the explorers settled in what is now North Dakota. There they built a fort, several log huts, and a blacksmith shop where they could repair their boats. Near by lived the Mandan (măn′dăn) Indians, who liked the tools made in the white men's shop. The hunters brought in deer and beaver and buffalo meat, so the party was very comfortable until spring.

Then part of the men were sent back to St. Louis with many specimens for President Jefferson. Among them were stuffed animals (antelopes, squirrels, a prairie wolf, a white weasel), samples of Indian dress, bows and arrows, and a box of plants.

Thirty-two men went on westward. With them were a French trapper and his Indian wife, whom the white men called the Birdwoman. She helped them make friends with the Indians.

Crossing what is now the state of Montana, the explorers followed the Missouri River to its head waters. In some places they could hardly push the boats along. They waded up to their armpits in the water.

One boat was now drawn up on the bank so that the heavy baggage could be placed in a *cache*, which is a hiding place built on the ground. Here the men also planned to hide part of their stores, for use upon their

return. They cut out a circle of sod, which they were careful not to break. Then they dug a hole in the shape of a bottle, with the lower part much wider than the top. It was deep enough for a man to stand up in. All the dirt was carried away and put in the river so that the Indians would not see that the ground had been disturbed. On the bottom of the hole were placed dry sticks, with a buffalo robe over them. Then the baggage was laid in and covered with another skin, and the sod was fitted carefully on the top again, for the eyes of the Indians were very keen.

The Birdwoman had told the party of great falls in the river. Lewis and his men went ahead. One morning they heard the sound of falling water and saw spray rising into the air. There were three great falls, one above the other, with roaring waters between. From a hill they could see that the river above the falls was calm and peaceful.

The men had to carry the boats above these falls. When Clark arrived, they made a truck of a cottonwood tree. The wheels were made by sawing off sections of the biggest part of the trunk of the tree. On this truck the men loaded their boats and pushed and pulled with all their might. They often stepped on the spines of the prickly pear, which made sores on their feet. At the head of the falls they found quiet water and again launched their boats. To-day this place is the city of Great Falls, Montana.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why did Jefferson wish to buy the land at the mouth of the Mississippi River?
2. How far did the Louisiana territory reach?
3. Why did Jefferson wish to have this new territory explored?
4. Why did he choose Lewis and Clark to explore it?
5. What did they take with them?
6. Up what river did they pass? Find it on the map (p. 253).
7. What animals did the explorers find?

Books You Will Like

Bird, G. E., and Starling, Maud—*Historical Plays for Children*, pp. 173-198.

Elson, H. W.—*Side Lights on American History* (revised edition), Bk. I, pp. 125-134.

Humphrey, Grace—*Women in History*, pp. 80-100.

McMurry, C. A.—*Pioneers of the Rocky Mountains and the West*, pp. 1-39.

II

Captain Lewis had many adventures. There were thousands of buffaloes grazing on the plains, and one day he had just shot one when he saw a grizzly bear a few steps away. There was no time to load his empty rifle. There was not a tree or a rock in sight behind which he could hide; nothing was left but the river. Into the water he leaped and faced the bear, with his gun held as a club. Just then the bear turned and went away. Once Lewis shot a panther that was about to leap on him, and another time he boldly faced three angry buffaloes that came plunging toward him.

At last the party came to the mountains and had to leave their boats. Lewis and his men went forward to get some horses from the Indians, but the red men were very shy. When Lewis laid down his blanket, which was a sign of friendship, they turned and rode the other way.

Then he came upon some Indian squaws, who led him to their lodge. When Clark came up with the rest of the party, Lewis was seated on a white robe with the red men, and the chief had tied six white shells in his hair, which was a great honor.

The Birdwoman was called in to explain the Indian chief's words. She had hardly begun to talk when she jumped up and flung her arms and blanket about one of the braves. It was her brother, for this was the tribe of Indians from whom she had been stolen years before.

Lewis bought three horses for a coat, some leggings, and knives. For another horse he gave a pistol and a hundred rounds of powder. The Indians told the explorers that they would find steep mountains ahead, where they would have to dig roots for food, and that beyond the mountains they would have to travel for ten days over a desert, where there was no grass or water for their horses.

The trip over the mountains proved very hard. The men struggled up through ice and snow. When they saw the snow on the mountain tops, they had made deerskin clothing, but even with that they were often wet to the skin. The horses sometimes slipped and fell on the steep mountain sides. The Birdwoman helped them find roots for food. Some of the colts had to be killed for meat. Many times, when the others were discouraged, the Birdwoman told them what to do. On the western slopes of the mountains they found Indians who sold them dried fish to eat.

When they came to the Snake River, they built canoes, for it was now possible to travel by water. At last they reached the Columbia River, on which they

AT LAST LEWIS AND CLARK CAME TO THE MOUNTAINS.

traveled westward. One day they came to tidewater. Then they knew that the ocean could not be far away. There was a fog over the land, but when it lifted, there, lying before them, was the Pacific Ocean.

For four months the party stayed at the mouth of the Columbia River. They explored the country about them, prepared maps, and wrote reports. The weather was cold and rainy, but the Indians were kind. The natives learned that Red Head, as they too called Clark, could cure sick people, and they came with many gifts, asking him to help them.

In the spring Lewis and Clark started home. After crossing the mountains, Clark led one party to explore the Yellowstone River, while Lewis followed the Missouri.

It was good to be back where there was plenty of buffalo and deer meat. When they reached the country of the Mandans, the Birdwoman decided to stay, so they left their brave guide there. Now there is a statue of her in Portland, Oregon, and in the Capitol at Washington.

One day they met a white man on his way west from St. Louis to trade with the Indians. It was two years since the explorers had heard from home; they sat and talked nearly all night with the trader.

When Lewis and Clark reached Washington, Jefferson was overjoyed, for nearly everyone believed that the party had been lost. But Jefferson had always

had faith in the two old friends who had grown up near him in Virginia. As a reward for their faithful service, Lewis was made Governor of the tract of land they had explored, and Clark, who was a favorite with the red men, was given charge of Indian affairs.[1]

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. When Lewis and Clark left their boats, how did they travel?

2. How did the Birdwoman aid the party?

3. How was the food west of the mountains different from that to the east?

4. Find the Columbia River on the map. Trace the Lewis and Clark route from St. Louis to the Pacific Ocean (p. 253).

[1] "Books You Will Like" for this chapter are listed on page 256.

FREMONT AND KIT CARSON

John Charles Frémont (frē-mŏnt′) is called the Pathfinder of the West because he found several trails across the Rocky Mountains. His guide was the famous scout, Kit Carson, who had spent many years trapping beavers in these mountains.

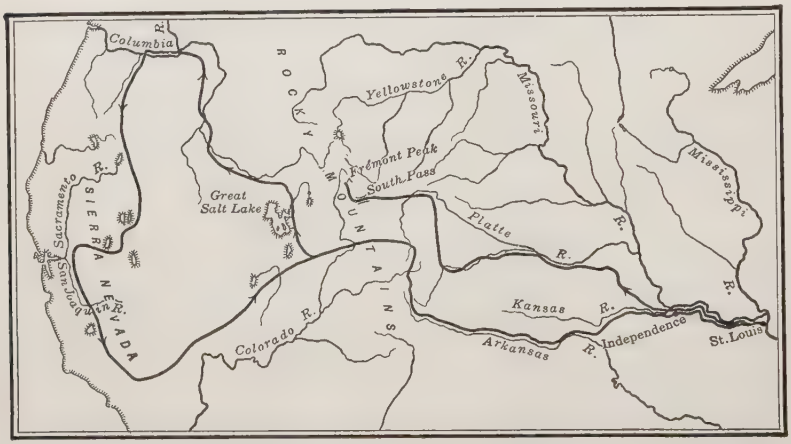
As a boy Frémont was a fine student. He had studied the stars, which are a great help in exploring. The Pathfinder was a very strong man. As he could endure a great deal of cold, he never wore an overcoat. Once he rode eight hundred miles in eight days in his wooden saddle. He was just the man to make long, hard trips into a new country.

After Lewis and Clark had made their trip to the Pacific coast, Frémont was sent by the Government to find places for United States forts and to build them. He and Kit Carson started from St. Louis with eight baggage carts filled with food, tools, and gifts for the Indians. They also took with them a boat, in which they could put their baggage and provisions. A few cattle and extra horses were driven behind the carts.

Kit Carson taught the men to arrange their wagons at night in a circle, as a protection while they slept.

The horses were tied by long ropes so that they could graze outside the circle.

Carson was a small, fair, wiry man, very quiet but quick to act. He feared nothing. One day the men heard a noise, and someone called, "Indians!" Kit Carson jumped on his horse without his hat and gal-



THIS MAP SHOWS TWO OF FRÉMONT'S JOURNEYS THROUGH THE WEST.

loped toward the sound. Soon he came back laughing. "Only some elk feeding," he said.

When the flour and bread were gone, the party lived on buffalo meat, which had been dried and dipped in tallow. It looked and tasted like wood.

One day when they were at breakfast, a buffalo calf ran right through their camp. He was followed by two wolves. The wolves were afraid of the men

and ran around the camp, but before the poor calf could join the herd grazing in the distance, the wolves ate him up.

Frémont saw the beginnings of the Colorado and Yellowstone rivers from a mountain peak which is now called Frémont Peak.

On the way home the party had an accident as they were going down a river in their boat. The men had struggled all day to keep the boat off the rocks, but at last it shot over a fall in the river and threw them all into the water. Guns and powder were soaking wet, and the men lost their coats and shoes. They left one man to save the boat, while the rest went farther down the river and made a new boat by sewing buffalo skins together and stretching them over a frame. The seams were calked with ashes and tallow. In this they reached home.

On another trip Frémont and Carson followed the Arkansas River far into the mountains. They went through the Royal Gorge, with its massive walls of red stone towering above them. Some of you have perhaps been through the Royal Gorge on a railroad train. Then it was an unknown narrow pass between two huge rock walls.

As Frémont and Carson were crossing the mountains beyond, they met a grizzly bear. The horses were so frightened that they almost pitched their riders from their saddles. Kit Carson kept calm; he had seen

grizzlies many times before. It took six shots to kill this fierce beast.

They crossed a desert and came upon some hot springs. The ground rumbled under their feet. The Indians declared that it was bewitched.

Soon after this they came upon a great lake, but when they tasted the water, they found it salty. There was an island in the lake. They thought that they would sail out to it. They had their supper of roots and roast duck and examined their boat. The Indians told them not to go, for there were many dangers. But Frémont was not afraid. He placed tools and spyglasses in the boat, and large bags of fresh water.

The next day at sunrise the men started. Clouds of water birds flew about their heads, watching these strange beings. The water grew very deep, and when the wind blew spray about, it left a crust of salt on the men and the boat. When the men reached the island, they shouted loud and long, but no one answered. It was probably the first time a human voice had ever been heard there. They camped all night and returned safely the next morning. This was Great Salt Lake. It seemed wonderful to the white men. They dried out some salt to take along with them.

Frémont and Carson reached the Columbia River and found the Klamath Indians, who lived in huts with rounded roofs. These Indians wore shoes made of

grass and straw, woven baskets for hats, and shells in their noses. They lived on fish, which they took from the river and dried.

Frémont did not reach the Pacific Ocean then but came back to the Great Basin between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada. He wished to cross the western range of mountains and see California. Kit Carson had been in California, but he was afraid of this route over the mountains in the winter, when the peaks were covered with deep snow. However, he said that he would go if Frémont did.

They asked the Indians about the crossing. "Rock upon rock, snow upon snow," said an old chief.

Frémont offered a young Indian some gay clothes if he would be their guide. Away he went on snowshoes, and Frémont's men followed. A horse was led ahead to make a track in the snow for the men. Packs were thrown away to make the loads of the other horses light. Some of the horses slipped down the mountain side, and the men grew faint with hunger and sore of foot. They were blinded by snow, and it was too cold to sleep at night. But on they went, dragging their supplies by hand. When they could not do better, they crawled on their hands and knees.

One day Frémont fell through the ice into deep water, but Kit Carson kept his head and dragged him out before he was swept under. They built a fire to dry their frozen clothing and then pressed on.

FRÉMONT AND CARSON ASKED THE INDIANS ABOUT CROSSING THE MOUNTAINS.

It was many days after that when Carson struggled to the top of a peak and called back, "There it is, the beautiful valley," and from the snow-covered heights they looked down on the green grass and flowers of California.

There was a large house in the valley built of bricks dried in the sun. It was the home of a white man named Captain Sutter. Indian men were plowing, and Indian women were carrying water to the gardens.

When the travelers reached his home, Captain Sutter gave them a warm welcome, and they rested for several days as his guests. Then they marched southward through a beautiful valley dotted with California poppies, lilies, and many blossoming trees.

Kit Carson led the way home over the Santa Fe Trail. To-day we can go over this trail on the Santa Fe Railroad, but then it meant a long, dangerous tramp. There were many Indians who were unfriendly, but Carson knew how to deal with them. Often the water was unfit to drink, and the men had to chew desert plants to moisten their mouths.

At this time California belonged to Mexico. The next time Frémont went to California he was ordered by the Mexicans to leave. He refused to do so. Instead, he built a fort and raised the American flag over it. Later, letters were brought to him from Washington, telling him that the United States was at war with Mexico. They told Frémont to try to take

California for the United States. Frémont joined with others from the United States, and before long they had raised the Stars and Stripes in California.

Frémont made his last trip across the mountains to choose a path for a railroad over them. On his way he heard of the finding of gold in the country he loved so well.

John Charles Frémont was given a beautiful sword in honor of his pathfinding, and there is a fine monument to Kit Carson at Trinidad, Colorado.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was Frémont a good man to send exploring?
2. Why was Kit Carson a good man to take along?
3. Dramatize the part of Frémont and Carson's travels which seems to you the most interesting.
4. Why is it hard to cross a desert?
5. Find out what makes the water in Great Salt Lake salt.
6. Let a Boy Scout explain how a knowledge of the stars helps an explorer.

A Book You Will Like

McMurry, C. A.—*Pioneers of the Rocky Mountains and the West*, pp. 40–93.

GOLD IN CALIFORNIA

The Spaniards had found gold in Mexico and in South America. De Soto had roamed over the southern part of our country hunting for gold, and the English had come to Jamestown searching for it. But it was more than two hundred years before much of the yellow metal was found in what is now the United States. Then it was discovered by accident. Gold and diamonds are often found in that way.

We have already been at the home of Captain Sutter in California with Frémont and Kit Carson and have seen his wonderful ranch. Shortly after their visit, in 1848, Sutter wanted a new sawmill. He sent a carpenter named Marshall to build one at a spot on the American River where there was good water power.

The soil here was very loose, and when the water came over the mill race it washed out some clear sand with bits of bright yellow in it. They looked like pure gold. Marshall gathered up a handful of the yellow pieces. He thought that he must have washed out a cache of the Indians. Then he found that there were many more yellow particles in the sand. "It must be gold," he said, "but Sutter will know more about it. I will take them to him."

He mounted his horse and rode away to see Captain Sutter. The two men tested the yellow bits with acid. Then they beat them into a thin sheet, which is another way to test for gold. "It is surely gold," Sutter said. "We must try to keep the news from the men until the mill is finished, for they will all go crazy." But it was no time at all before the secret leaked out, and every man in the valley was hunting for gold.

San Francisco, on the Pacific coast, had already grown to be quite a city. One day a man came walking down one of the streets with a pocketful of gold. "I picked it up on the banks of the American River," he said. Gold—to be picked up! We can imagine the excitement.

It was more than a hundred miles to the river, but every man who was able to travel put a sign over his door, "Gone to the diggings," and left to hunt for gold. San Francisco was deserted. Nearly every man had left the city—the doctors, the newspaper men, and the shopkeepers. Ships were left in the harbor while the sailors hurried to the gold fields. Only a few stayed to sell food and clothing to those who came and went. They charged almost any price they chose, and some of them made more money than if they had dug up gold.

Soon there were four thousand men in the gold fields. They lived like Indians, sleeping on the ground wherever night found them. Each took a small piece of ground, called a *claim*, and tried to

SOME OF THE GOLD SEEKERS WENT FROM THE EAST TO CALIFORNIA BY TRAVELING OVERLAND.

hold it. They washed the sand and gravel along the river and shook it through a sieve to see if there were particles of gold. When gold was found, there was nothing to protect the miner's hoard but his own knife and pistol. Some men grew very rich, but others lost all they found. Marshall, who had discovered the gold, hurried from one place to another and at last died alone in his hut, a poor man.

After many months the news reached the East, and men rushed from there to California. Some people went overland. There was then no railroad across the country, and many walked or drove wagons over the desert and the mountains. Other people went by ship, going thousands of miles around South America; and still others crossed the Isthmus of Panama. They were called the "forty-niners" because 1849 was the year of the gold rush.

When the gold seekers arrived, they had to have food. They paid a tremendous price for a loaf of bread or a sack of flour brought to them on the backs of animals from San Francisco.

After the gold excitement was over, many of the miners remained in California. Some of them made a living by raising fruit, farming, or lumbering. In three short years there were a hundred thousand people in California, and it soon became a state.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did Sutter test the gold?
2. Why is it that gold is wanted by everyone?
3. What would you have liked about hunting for gold in 1849? Is there anything you would have disliked?
4. On a map trace three ways in which men went to California.
5. Why did not all the gold seekers get rich?

Books You Will Like

Elson, H. W.—*Side Lights on American History* (revised edition), Bk. I, pp. 244-256.

McMurry, C. A.—*Pioneers of the Rocky Mountains and the West*, pp. 94-113.

Nida, W. L.—*Following the Frontier*, pp. 253-266.

Paxson, F. L.—*The Last American Frontier*, pp. 104-118.

ELI WHITNEY AND THE COTTON GIN

You all know boys who are clever at fixing things. To be able to put machinery together is a great gift, and if you can do this, it may some day make you a very useful and famous person.

One day at Yale College a delicate machine was out of order, and the professor said, "I shall have to send this to Europe to have it repaired."

"Let me fix it," said young Eli Whitney, who was in the class; and he made the machine as good as new. This made him well known in the college.

When Whitney was through school, he went south to teach in Savannah. In the town lived the widow of Nathanael Greene, one of the bravest officers of the Revolutionary War. Eli Whitney became the teacher of her children in her home. He was very helpful to Mrs. Greene, for he could fix everything about the house. Mrs. Greene liked to tell her friends about him. She said, "This young man can make anything."

To her home came many wealthy planters who were raising cotton on their plantations. There was a great demand for cotton to make cloth, both in the United States and in England. The soil and the climate of the South were fine for cotton, but there was one thing

that took all the profit from the cotton crop. The seeds were so tightly bound up with the cotton fibers that it was very hard to remove them. They had to be pulled out by hand, and it took a man a whole day to remove the seeds from one pound of cotton.

The planters begged Whitney to invent a machine that would take the seeds from the cotton, so he set to work to do it. Whitney had no tools to use in making his machine, but he made them as he went along. He made a cylinder, or roll, with teeth on the outside. This turned within a wire cage. The teeth pulled the cotton into the cage through the wires. As the seeds were too large to enter, they were pulled loose from the fibers.

This engine, which the slaves called a *gin*, worked so well that one colored man turning the machine by hand could do as much as fifty men could do in the old way, without the gin. But the gin was not quite perfect. Some of the small seeds stayed in the fibers. Whitney kept at work until he had a gin that would take out even the smallest seeds.

He tried to keep his invention a secret until he could get a patent, or permission from the United States Government to prevent other people from making and selling the machine. But someone broke into his workshop and stole his model. Before he knew it, cotton gins were being made and used by many people.

BY THE USE OF THE COTTON GIN, THE SEEDS COULD BE REMOVED FROM COTTON QUICKLY AND EASILY.

Soon all the rich land of the South was planted with cotton, and more and more black people were needed to plant and pick it.

The farms of the South, where the work was done by the slaves, were called plantations, as you probably know. The master and mistress lived in a beautiful home, while negro women did the housework and cared for the children. Both black men and women worked in the cotton fields, and the owner of the plantation became very wealthy.

If the master and mistress were kind, the slaves were well fed and clothed and cared for while they lived. The mistress visited the sick slaves and gave them every care. But when the slave owners died, the slaves could be sold. Some of them were beaten by rough overseers who stood over them in the cotton fields. At last slavery came to be thought a cruel thing in the free country of the United States.

In time Whitney made another cotton gin, for which he received a patent. He made some money from his gin, but it should have made him a wealthy man, as it did the planters for whom he invented it.

Although Whitney's gin helped to make the number of slaves greater, it is said that he helped in the war that put down slavery, by inventing a new gun.

When a part of your automobile breaks to-day, you send for another part. You do not need to buy a whole new machine. The new parts fit because they

are all made alike by machinery. Whitney did this first with his guns. He invented machinery which made the parts of his guns alike. When the Civil War came to free the slaves, he made thousands of guns for the Union soldiers.

But the cotton gin is the thing which made Whitney famous and for which we have to thank him most. When you look at any cotton garment that you wear and notice some of the threads, you may be sure that the fibers that are woven into it went through a gin made after the plan of the first one invented by Eli Whitney.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What had stood in the way of making money with cotton?
2. Why did not Whitney become wealthy from his invention?
3. What effect did the gin have on the number of slaves?
4. Did Whitney help make cotton cloth cheaper for all of us? Give the reason for your answer.

Books You Will Like

Bachman, F. P.—*Great Inventors and Their Inventions*, p. 105.

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Makers of Progress*, pp. 50–55.

Parkman, M. R.—*Conquests of Invention*, pp. 63–80.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN AND THE CIVIL WAR

Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, lived for a while in Indiana, and later moved to Illinois. He lived in the days when every man carried a rifle to kill game, but he did not like a gun, for he hated to kill anything. Many stories are told of his kind heart and the trouble he took to save birds and animals.

One of his schoolmates remembered an essay he wrote in school. Abe said, "The life of an ant is as sweet to it as ours is to us." One day he thrashed some boys who were putting burning coals on the back of a turtle. While driving an ox-team from his old home in Indiana to his new home in Illinois, he stopped and waded back through water and mud to save a poor little dog that was left behind.

But Abe Lincoln was no coward. He was not afraid to fight for what was right. He could "lick" any bully in the county and was sometimes called upon to do it.

Abe went to school very little, but he was determined to have an education. A boy who would spend his evenings doing examples on a wooden shovel and then shave off the wood so that he could do more was bound to learn arithmetic. Books were very scarce in Indi-

ana, but when Abe heard of a book, he walked many miles to borrow it. When he was older, he asked a man to teach him grammar.

"I am afraid that there is not a grammar in this county," said the man.

But Abe at last found one and set to work. "Well," he said, "if I don't find anything worse than that, I guess I can do it."

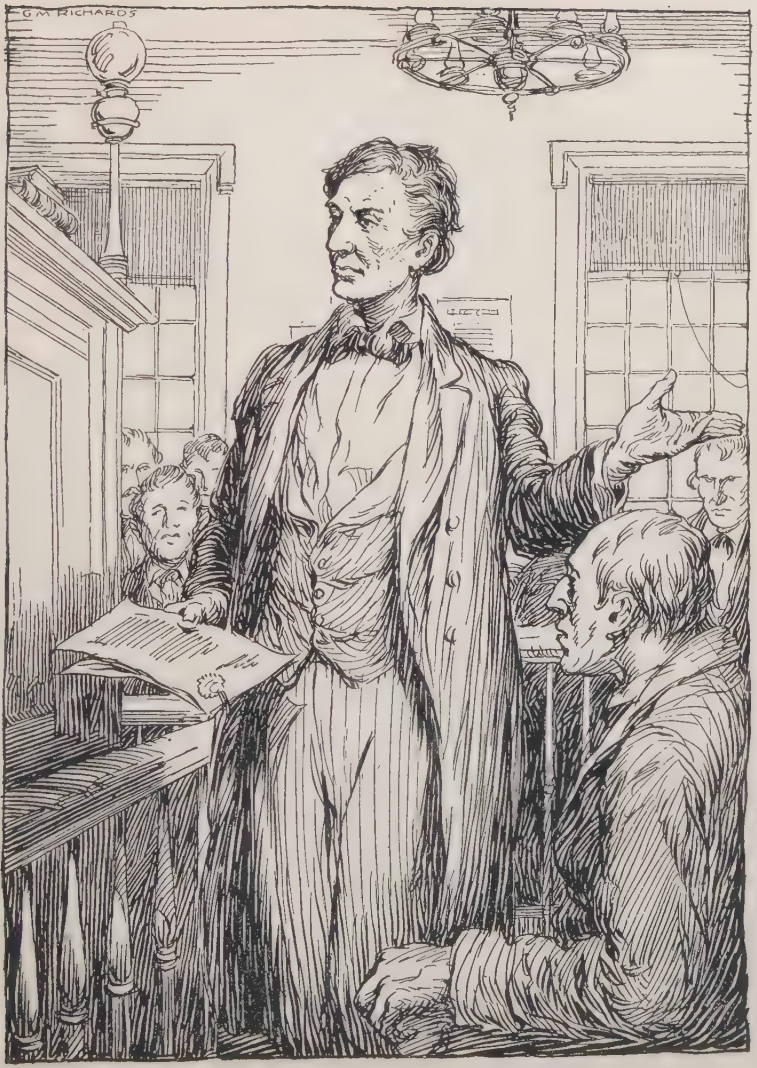
One day there was an election. A man was needed who knew how to write. It was strange how few men there were who could write well in this new country west of the mountains. "Abe, can you write?" asked someone.

"Well, yes, I can make a few turkey tracks," said Abe, and he was made one of the clerks of the election.

Abe was a great favorite because he was witty and could tell many stories.

When he was a man, Abraham Lincoln studied law, but he did not become a lawyer by going to a law school. One day when he was keeping a country store, a man left with him a barrel of things. In it was a set of law books. Abe was eager to get his hands on them. Day after day when he had a free hour, he lay under a tree in front of the store, reading those law books over and over.

The first time Abe traveled far from home he went down the river on a flatboat to New Orleans. The boat was pushed along by men with poles and was



AFTER HE BECAME A LAWYER, LINCOLN OFTEN DEFENDED POOR PEOPLE WITHOUT PAY.

loaded with corn and pork to be sold. In New Orleans Abe heard people speaking French and saw many new sights. He had seen slaves in his homeland in Kentucky, but in New Orleans he saw colored girls sold in a slave market. They were driven about like cattle, and it made Lincoln rage to see women treated that way. "If I ever get a chance to hit slavery, I'll hit it hard," said Lincoln to the man with him.

Slavery had grown very fast in the South. All the plantations had colored slaves to work in the cotton and rice fields. In many places they were given good care and treated kindly, but there were also some cruel masters. Often colored children were taken from their mothers and sold.

The people of the North did not need slaves to do their work, and many of them thought it a terrible thing that in a free country like the United States four million black people could be bought and sold. Sometimes a slave escaped and ran away to the North, but there was a law that made the people of the North return a runaway slave to his owner.

Every time a new state came into the Union the question came up, "Shall it be a slave state or a free state?" For many years there was much trouble over the question of slavery.

Abraham Lincoln had now become a great lawyer. He would not plead a case unless it was right, and he defended many poor people from whom he received

no pay. He was finally elected to a high office in Illinois.

As Lincoln grew older he gave more and more thought to the question of slavery. He said, "A nation that is half slave and half free cannot long endure"; and whenever he made speeches his voice was heard against slavery. Everyone knew how he felt about it. And so when Abraham Lincoln was made President of the United States, eleven of the Southern states said: "They have elected a President who is against slavery. We have a right to our own property and want to make laws to please ourselves. We are going to secede, or break away, from the United States and become a nation called the Confederate States of America."

The state of South Carolina withdrew first, and then Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas withdrew; finally Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina seceded. Here was the United States divided into two parts: the Confederate States and the Union. Jefferson Davis was made President of the Confederate States.

What was Lincoln to do? He had taken the President's oath to keep the Union from being broken. He said, "If we must fight, let the Confederates fire the first gun." And very soon they did.

Lincoln sent supplies to Fort Sumter, which was a Union fort in South Carolina, and Jefferson Davis ordered the Confederates to fire on the fort. Then

Lincoln called for soldiers to defend the Union. Soon a large army gathered, and war began.

It was called the Civil War because it was fought between two parts of the same country. Sometimes families were divided, so that one brother fought on one side and one on the other.

The Confederate soldiers believed they were defending their property and their homes and their rights. The Union soldiers believed that they were fighting to save the Union and to do away with slavery. Most of the battles were fought in the South, and many beautiful plantations and homes were laid waste and destroyed. The Confederates tried to take the capital at Washington, and the Union soldiers tried to capture Richmond, which was the capital of the Confederate States.

One day Lincoln signed a very important paper. It was called the Emancipation Proclamation, because it proclaimed that all the slaves were emancipated, or made free. Then the fighting was harder than ever.

Four long years the war raged, and Lincoln's heart was torn at the sorrow and suffering everywhere. But he had promised to "hit slavery hard," and he knew the people of his country must fight until the question was settled forever.

At last the terrible war was ended, and peace was in our land once more. Then one night Lincoln went to a theater for a little rest and amusement. A man

who was friendly to the South came into the box where he sat and shot him. How our country mourned for its lost leader!

No man in all our history is more loved than Abraham Lincoln, the poor lad who won his way to the President's chair by working for a cause he believed to be right.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What stories have you heard that show Lincoln had a kind heart?
2. What stories show his courage?
3. What did he learn on the flatboat trip?
4. How was Lincoln like Wilberforce?
5. Locate on a map in your geography the eleven states that tried to break away from the Union.

Books You Will Like

Baldwin, James—*Four Great Americans*, pp. 177-235.

McMurry, C. A.—*Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, pp. 170-184.

Morgan, James—*Abraham Lincoln: The Boy and the Man.*

Nida, S. H.—*Letters of Polly the Pioneer*, pp. 91–94, 166–182.

Wheeler, D. E.—*Abraham Lincoln.*

ULYSSES S. GRANT, THE UNION LEADER

Ulysses Grant hated his name. It was so hard to pronounce that his people called him Lys, and the boys called him Useless. He learned his lessons well at school, but he often thought them very stupid.

The thing Ulysses hated most was his father's tannery. In a tannery skins are made into leather. The skins are soaked in ground oak bark and water, and the hair is taken off. Lys often had to drive the horse that was used in grinding the bark. The tannery was a bad-smelling place, and whenever he was sent there to work he tried to find a way of getting out of it.

There was, however, something that Lys dearly loved, and that was a horse. One day a neighbor came to his mother and said, "Really you must make Lys stop swinging on the tails of the horses or he will be kicked to death." But nothing could keep the boy away from horses.

One day a circus man came to town with a trick pony. The pony would not let anyone stay on his back. The circus man offered five dollars to any boy who could ride the pony. Lys won the five dollars. After that you may be sure that he played circus with all the horses in the neighborhood.

After a great deal of trouble Lys's father managed to get him appointed as a cadet to West Point, where young men are trained to be army officers. But Ulysses was afraid that he could not pass the examinations and said that he would not go. His father said he must, and he did. On the way he had his first ride on a railroad train, which flew along at about twelve miles an hour. After all, he almost failed to be admitted to West Point. A man must be over five feet tall to enter, and Grant was barely five feet two inches.

At last he was a cadet, and he showed himself a clear thinker and a steady worker. He went at his task and never stopped until he had conquered it. Grant was a silent fellow, but he knew how to take orders. After the first few weeks, when he had been forced to stand the teasing of his mates and worry over the examinations, he "made good." Now if a boy can do one thing better than anyone else, he is likely to be popular. Grant rode a horse better than any other cadet. But he did not think he would like fighting; he hoped that there would never be another war.

One day his ambition was aroused. General Scott came to review the cadets. Ulysses had never seen such a grand sight as General Scott in his military clothes on his fine horse. All at once he longed with all his might to be the commander of an army.

After Grant was graduated from West Point, he

GRANT CAPTURED VICKSBURG AFTER A LONG AND TERRIBLE SIEGE.

married a lovely wife. Shortly afterward he was sent far from home to forts in Oregon and California. He could not bear to live so far from his family, so he resigned from the army and came home to try farming. He worked hard but did not succeed. For many years it looked as if he could hardly make a living.

When the Civil War broke out, Grant was a man of about forty and only a poor clerk in his father's leather store in Galena, Illinois. He was such a silent man that his neighbors would not have known that he had been a soldier if he had not been so poor that he had to wear an old blue army coat to work. When they wanted to have a company trained for the war, they called on him. Grant drilled his company and took them to Springfield. Soon he was in command of an army and had won a clever victory.

Grant's first great victory during the war was the capture of Vicksburg. One big plan of the war was for the Union soldiers to take the Mississippi River so as to cut off some of the Confederate States from the others. All the important points on the river had been taken except Vicksburg.

Vicksburg was hard to take because it was protected by high bluffs on the west and by swamps on the north and east. Grant therefore had to attack from the south. A double bend in the river here made it hard for the Union boats to pass Vicksburg quickly. The Confederates had many big guns planted two hundred

feet above the river and sent cannon balls into every boat that came in sight.

Grant sent word to General Scott, "You may not hear from me for some time." He had his troops on the west side of the river but saw that he must get across to the east side south of the city if he hoped to reach Vicksburg. This was a very daring thing to try to do, for he would be surrounded on all sides by enemy troops. He asked Admiral Porter to run by the cannons, or batteries, of Vicksburg with twenty vessels to take his army across. The gunboats had to pass the batteries twice because of the bend in the river. The other officers said, "It cannot be done." But Grant answered, "I am not of the same mind."

AT VICKSBURG THERE WAS A BEND IN THE RIVER.

When Porter's boats came by night in sight of Vicksburg, the enemy lighted bonfires and made the river as light as day, but the boats went straight on in spite of the cannon balls. They were under fire two hours, and all were hit, but they got by the fortifications without great loss. Grant's men were soon landed across the river, below the city.

Here were thousands of Union men in enemy country, without baggage or food, except what they could get by foraging. If Grant's plan failed, he would lose his

whole army. If he succeeded, the Mississippi River would be won. Grant beat off those who attacked him from behind. Then he tried to charge the fortifications and failed. He saw that the only thing the Union army could do was lay siege to the city and wait until the soldiers and citizens of Vicksburg were starved out and so forced to surrender.

All supplies were cut off from the city. The Union army sent shell after shell into the streets. The people inside burrowed into the banks and bluffs along the river and made their homes in caves to keep from being shot. When the food gave out, they ate rats and dead horses and other refuse; but at last powder became scarce, and then they did not know what to do.

Often the pickets, or guards, of the garrison and those of the Union army stood where they could talk to each other. "Well, Yank, when are you coming to town?" asked a Confederate picket. "On the Fourth of July" was the joking answer.

The word reached the Confederate General. He thought Grant was planning to attack the fort on that day, and so on the third of July he flew the white flag, and a ragged, hungry army of thirty-one thousand men stacked their arms and surrendered to General Grant. The Union troops marched into Vicksburg. Grant at once ordered ten days' rations to be given to the starving people of the city.

President Lincoln was highly pleased when he heard

that Vicksburg had surrendered. He wrote Grant: "I did not think you could do it. You were right, and I was wrong." He made the successful Grant a major-general.

Grant was a modest man. When his friends and the whole country praised him for this brave deed, he said, "I just pounded away until I pounded the place down."

Many times after this Grant led his men to victory. He was the last Commander-in-Chief of the Union forces. To end the war, he had to capture General Lee and take Richmond, the Confederate capital. Lee was also a wonderful West Point soldier, and Grant could not beat him in battle. Grant tried the starving plan again. He ordered General Sherman to march across the South from Atlanta to the sea and destroy the railroads, crops, and supplies. When food and supplies became short, Lee was forced to leave Richmond. His brave troops were suffering, and the Confederate leader had to surrender to Grant. The Civil War was ended.

A few years after this Grant was made President of the United States. The modest man who appeared to be a failure at forty had earned the highest honor that our country can give.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do you know or what can you find out about making leather?
2. What great men besides Grant loved horses?
3. How was Grant different from Lincoln?
4. What do you think were the best qualities Grant had?
5. Why was Vicksburg hard to capture?

Books You Will Like

Coombs, Lovell—*U. S. Grant.*

Morgan, James—*Our Presidents* (school edition), pp. 171-185.

ROBERT E. LEE, THE CONFEDERATE LEADER

One of the finest generals that ever fought in any war was the Commander-in-Chief of the Confederate Army, Robert E. Lee. Even the people he fought against honor him, for he did what he believed to be right although it brought him to defeat.

Robert E. Lee was bound to be a soldier, for all his family before him were soldiers. His father, "Light Horse Harry" Lee of the Revolution, died when Robert was only eleven years old.

The Lees lived on a plantation in Virginia, where all the buildings were kept under lock and key, for the slaves were like small children and would help themselves to anything they wanted. Robert's mother was an invalid, and Robert took charge of all the keys when he was still a small boy. In the morning he unlocked the pantry, gave the cook the supplies for the day, and locked it up again. For many years Robert cared tenderly for his mother. When he was older, he used to carry her to the carriage every day for a ride.

Robert was very strong and a fine runner. It is said that he could keep up with the horses for many

hours at a time when they were on a fox hunt. He grew to be a strong, rugged man, and at West Point he graduated second in his class. He married a granddaughter of the George Washington family and lived at Arlington, near Washington.

Lee won his first honors in the war with Mexico. Once on a long march several men were sent to find a part of General Scott's army, which was lost. The way was hard and rough. Six of the men turned back, but Lee went ahead and brought back the lost soldiers. Many years later General Scott said, "If I were asked who should take charge of the Union army, I would say Robert E. Lee."

When the Civil War broke out, Lee was asked to take charge of the Union army. He said: "I cannot do that. My native state is Virginia. It is a slave state. I have no slaves now, but if I owned all the four million blacks in the South, I would give them all up to avoid this war. Still, I believe Virginia has a right to withdraw from the Union if she wishes, and being a Virginian, I shall defend my native state." He therefore resigned from the Union army and gave up all the honors he had won in it. Then he joined the Confederates.

Many stories are told of Lee's kindness and the love his soldiers bore him. Once he placed himself on his fine white horse at the head of some troops. He thought that they would win the battle if he led them,

but they would not move. They called out: "Lee to the rear! Lee to the rear!"

At last the captain rode up to him and said: "General Lee, we are ready to charge, but we are unwilling to see you in such danger. If you will go back, we will go forward."

Lee said: "You are brave men and do not need me. I will retire."

General Lee was in time made Commander-in-Chief of the Confederate army. With smaller armies and poorer supplies than the Union commanders had, he gained many great victories. He defeated five Union generals, one after the other, and it took Grant more than a year to defeat his ragged, starving troops around Richmond.

On April 9, 1865, Lee went with an officer to Appomattox Courthouse to meet Grant and ask on what terms he could surrender the Confederate army. He rode his gray horse Traveler and looked very handsome in a new Confederate uniform. At his side was a magnificent sword given him by the people of Virginia.

Grant received Lee's message when he was out in the field and hastened to the meeting in his blue flannel shirt, with his trousers tucked in the top of his boots.

The two generals met very cordially. They had both fought in the war with Mexico and spoke of their

"IF YOU WILL GO BACK, GENERAL LEE, WE WILL GO FORWARD."

meeting there. Then Lee asked Grant to write down the terms of surrender. He slowly put on his spectacles to read what Grant had written. "The Confederate soldiers shall be paroled, and all supplies shall be the property of the Union army except the arms, horses, and baggage of the officers." Lee was greatly touched at Grant's courtesy, which let him keep his sword.

He said: "General Grant, my horsemen are all mounted on their own horses, and the horses that draw the cannon and the supply wagons all belong to my men. I should like to have them returned to the owners."

Grant said: "Your men will again be citizens of the Union and will need their horses to cultivate the land. Let every man who claims a horse have it."

Lee asked Grant to let him return one thousand Union prisoners as soon as possible because he had no food for them. Grant at once ordered food for the Confederate army.

Lee stepped to the door, called for Traveler, and with tears in his eyes rode back to his troops. When he rode before them, they pressed about him, trying to take his hand or lay their hands on the neck of his horse.

"The war is over," said Lee. "We are again citizens of the United States. We have been together a long time, and I have done the best I could for you. Good-by, and try to forget your feeling against the North."

Lee spent the rest of his life trying to get the Southern people to have the right feeling toward the people of the North. He was made President of Washington University, which is now called Washington and Lee University. In the South to-day no man's memory is more beloved.

Had he not thought it his duty to stand by his native state, he too might have been President of the United States or had the honor of winning the war.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. If your state should try to break away and make war on the United States, what would you do?

2. Which do you think was a greater general, Grant or Lee? Why?

3. Do you know of any men who are loved by their enemies?

4. Dramatize the meeting between Grant and Lee at Appomattox Courthouse.

BEETHOVEN, THE MUSICIAN

There have been many great writers of music, whom we call composers, but the best loved of all is Ludwig van Beethoven (vän bā′tō-vĕn). About the time our country was gaining its freedom from England, in the days of Franklin and Washington, Ludwig was born in Bonn on the Rhine River in Germany. The baby came to a very poor home. The father was an idle fellow, who left the care of his family to the grandfather; but when Ludwig was only four years old, the grandfather died. The little boy had already shown a talent for music—both his father and his grandfather were musicians—and the father decided that he would make Ludwig a great musician so that he might support the family.

When he was five years old, Ludwig began to have regular lessons, and his father kept him practicing at the piano many hours each day. It is said that his father often came home late at night and made the child leave his bed to practice.

Later Ludwig's teachers were the organists of the court. One of them taught Beethoven how to compose music for the violin and piano. By the time he was eleven years old, he had written several sonatas, or musical pieces which have three or four divisions.

When Ludwig was seventeen, someone gave him money enough to go to Vienna to meet the great musicians. Here he was introduced to Mozart, who was then about thirty years old and already famous. Beethoven was invited to play for Mozart. The poor lad was shy and awkward and poorly dressed; but when he sat at the piano, he forgot himself and played such marvelous melodies that Mozart remarked to some friends, "Pay attention to this lad. Some day he will make a stir in the world."

Ludwig had only a few happy months in Vienna, however. He was called home by the illness of his mother, and at her death he had to take care of his younger brothers. He bought their food and clothes by giving music lessons.

These lessons brought him some good fortune. Beethoven taught the children of a refined and cultured woman who took a great interest in his welfare. In her home he met many noted people. She taught him more gentle manners and urged him to read good books. It was through her motherly kindness that he was enabled to return to Vienna to study with Haydn, another famous musician.

Everyone now knew that Beethoven was a genius, and he was invited to the homes of nobles and princes. But he never learned to feel at home among the nobility. He did not like to dress for dinner and wear a wig and silk stockings. He preferred to live by himself.

The children of the nobles were proud to go to his bare rooms for music lessons. But Beethoven did not like teaching. He was impatient. It is said that he went into a dreadful temper if his pupils were dull or failed to pay attention.

When Beethoven was playing he forgot all else and expected his hearers to do so. Once when he was playing in the home of a nobleman, a young man in the audience whispered. Beethoven sprang from the piano and left the room, crying, "I will play no more for such as you."

Beethoven loved the woods and open fields and tried to put the beautiful sounds of nature into his music. In the spring he went out to the open country to enjoy the birds and flowers. They were the inspiration of much of his best music. In his symphony called the "Pastoral"—a symphony is music for an orchestra—he has the songs of birds, the murmuring of brooks, the roar of the thunderstorm which breaks up the picnic of the peasants, and a joyful chorus of the shepherds.

Before he was thirty years old, a very sad thing happened to Beethoven. He lost his hearing. The affliction came so gradually that he did not realize it until one day when he was walking in a field with a friend. There he saw a shepherd with a flute at his lips.

"Why does he not pipe?" asked Beethoven.

"He is piping," said the friend. "Can you not hear him?"

BEETHOVEN WAS INVITED TO PLAY FOR MOZART.

Poor Beethoven had to admit that he could not hear. Now he was forced to give up leading a chorus. He could not hear his own piano even though he played loudly. This affliction made him sad and unhappy. His admirers were forced to overlook his gloomy face and rough manners. He worked more by himself and got his joy from writing beautiful music. He could imagine just how this music would sound, even though he never really heard it.

Among his great works are nine marvelous symphonies, thirty-eight piano sonatas, besides other sonatas for the piano and violin. He wrote sixty-seven songs and an opera called "Fidelio." These are all played and enjoyed to-day by music lovers everywhere.

The story of the "Moonlight Sonata" is one everyone loves. One night when Beethoven and a friend were walking down the street in Vienna, they heard music and stopped before a small house, where someone was playing one of Beethoven's sonatas. Suddenly the music stopped, and they heard a voice say, "O if I could only hear a great musician play this wonderful piece."

"Let us enter," said Beethoven.

They found a blind girl at the piano and her brother near by mending shoes.

"Allow me to play for you," said Beethoven. He played for a long time before the girl suspected who he was. Then he played a few bars of the sonata she had

been playing. At that the blind girl cried, "You are the great master himself. Do play some more."

The only light in the room was from a tallow candle; soon it flickered low and went out, and there was darkness. The friend opened the shutters and let in a flood of moonlight. Beethoven was that night so inspired that he composed the sonata to the moonlight. Then he said a kindly farewell to the girl and her brother and hastened home to write the notes of the music he had just played for them.

Beethoven's whole life was sad. In spite of the beautiful music he gave the world, he was not himself happy. In his last years he said: "I have genius, but no one cares. I am most miserable." He died in the midst of a great thunderstorm, and some of his last words show how much he had grieved over his lost hearing. He said, "I shall hear in heaven."

Thousands of friends gathered at his funeral to honor the great man, and at his grave a beautiful hymn was played which Beethoven himself had composed.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Have a Beethoven program, with stories about him and some of his music played on the piano or the phonograph.

2. Do you think children should be forced to practice music? Why?

3. What do these words mean: *genius? pastoral? sonata? symphony?*

DAVID LIVINGSTONE, THE MISSIONARY

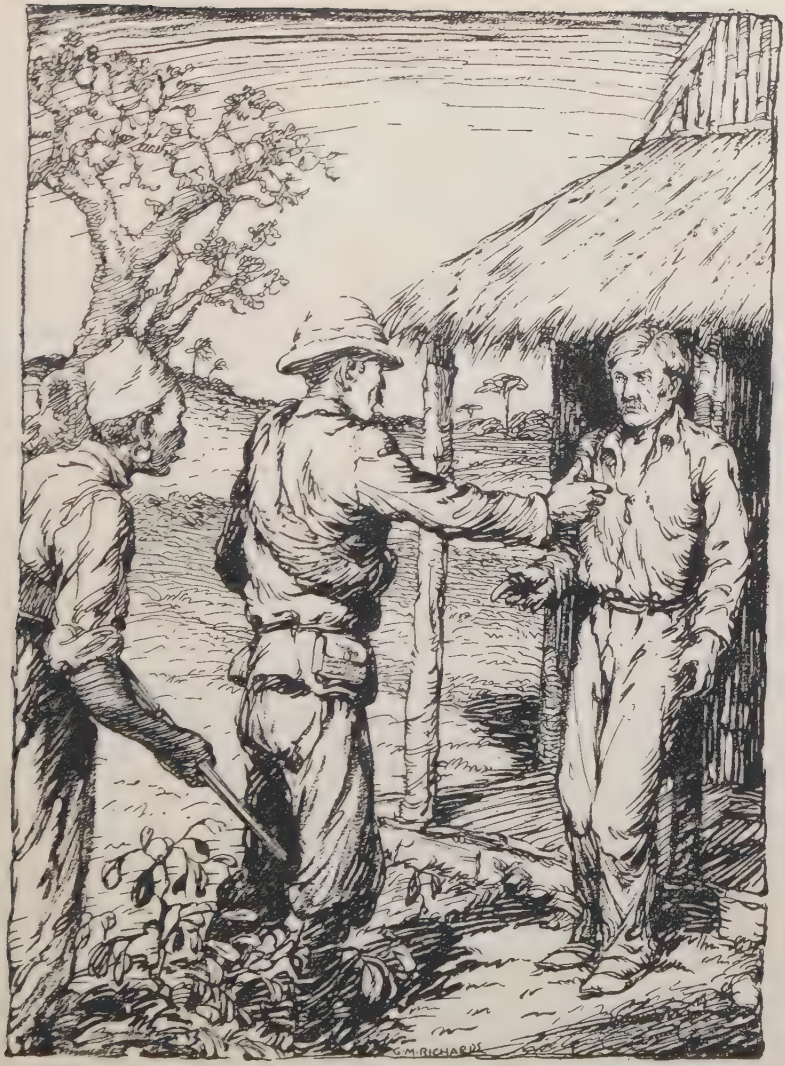
Africa, as you perhaps know, is a vast continent, where a great number of negroes live. For many, many years no white man had ever visited the middle lands of Africa, so that the world knew almost nothing of what central Africa was like. The negroes who lived in the wild jungles there were savages, and people called Africa the Dark Continent.

It was David Livingstone who first dared risk his life among these savage negroes. As a boy, David worked in a factory in Scotland by day. At night he went to school, for he was eager to study. By carefully saving his money, he was able to go to college.

Then Livingstone decided to become a missionary, and he started for the Dark Continent, where millions of people needed the help of a doctor and teacher.

Once among the negroes, he began learning their customs and their language. He soon married the daughter of another missionary and set up housekeeping. Livingstone made all his own pots and pans at a small hand forge he carried with him. Everything he wanted, including his house, he had to make himself.

The negroes came to love Livingstone and were faithful to him. As he had learned to be a doctor, he healed



STANLEY FINALLY FOUND LIVINGSTONE, PALE AND WEAK FROM ILLNESS.

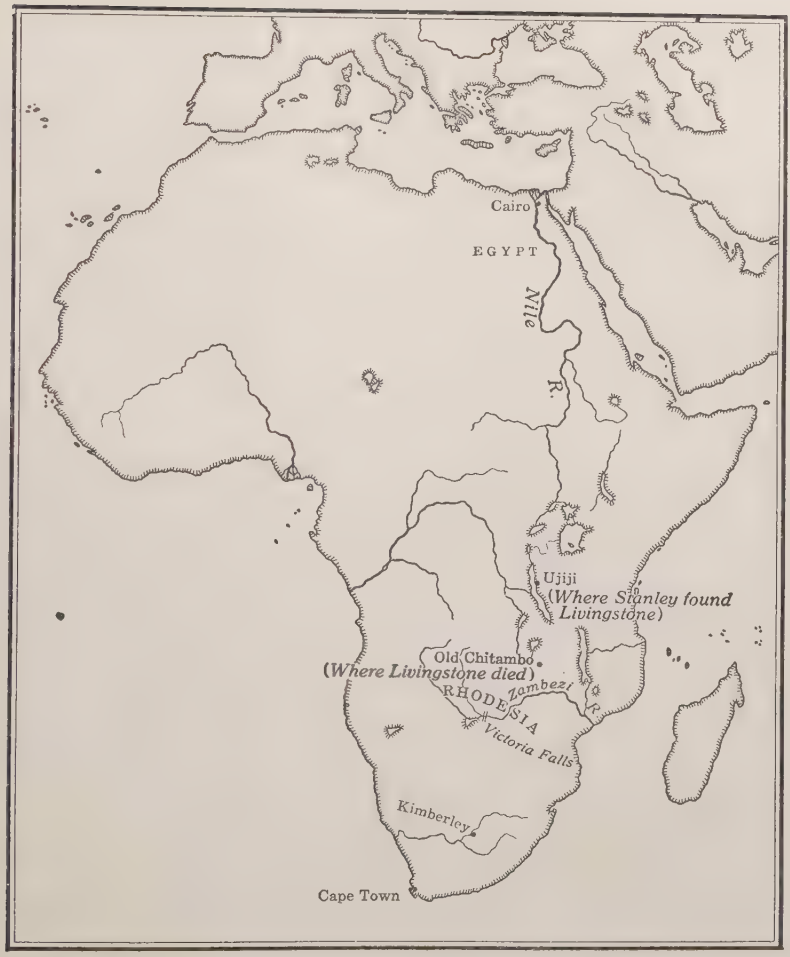
the sick and taught the people better ways of living. They guided him through the jungle wherever he wished to go. But he often met unfriendly tribes, and he was always in danger from the wild animals of the jungle. He became ill of a fever that almost cost him his life, but he never gave up his work.

Livingstone pushed farther and farther into the heart of Africa, finding great lakes and mighty rivers. One day he came upon the wonderful falls of the Zambezi River, which he named Victoria Falls after the Queen of England.

At last he had crossed the entire continent of Africa from west to east. He told of its fertile lands, its countless tribes of black men, and its mighty rivers and lakes.

England was glad to have Livingstone explore Africa, for his explorations gave it a claim to these lands; so when Livingstone returned to England, he was given great honor. The people and the Queen showered gifts upon the brave explorer.

His friends wished him to remain in England, for they thought that he had risked enough for the savage tribes of Africa, but Livingstone was soon back in the Dark Continent, following unknown trails and looking for the birthplace of the Nile River. He pushed on through the jungles till he was very weary. He was annoyed by Arabs and robbed, but still he trudged on through the land of the big lakes of Africa, seeking the beginning of the Nile.



THIS MAP OF AFRICA WILL HELP YOU UNDERSTAND THE STORIES OF DAVID LIVINGSTONE AND CECIL RHODES.

By this time England had lost track of her daring explorer. For years no one had heard from him, and many thought that he had perished or was a prisoner of some savage band.

It was in 1871 that the *New York Herald* sent one of its reporters, Henry M. Stanley, to search for Livingstone. Africa is an immense and savage land to enter in search of one white man, but Stanley finally found Livingstone, pale and weak from illness. Stanley asked him to return to England, but he refused to leave "darkest" Africa.

David Livingstone was soon too weak to ride his donkey. He could go no farther, and in a short time he died. His faithful negroes carried his body sadly to the sea, where a ship took it to England. His motherland gave him her highest honor, burial in Westminster Abbey in London, where England's great men rest.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was Africa called the Dark Continent?
2. What other great men have you read about who had a hard time getting an education?
3. Find out why Africa is a more backward continent than ours.
4. Point out on a map Africa's large rivers and lakes.
5. Why did England honor Livingstone?
6. If you had been sent to find Livingstone, what would you have done?

CECIL RHODES, A PIONEER IN AFRICA

When Cecil Rhodes (rōdz) was a young man in Oxford University, England, he became ill and was told to take a long sea voyage for a rest. In order to build up his health, he decided to live out of doors. He therefore joined his brother Herbert in a far colony of England in South Africa.

That year diamonds were discovered in the mines at Kimberley in South Africa, and many people became suddenly rich. Cecil and his brother left their farm, went to Kimberley, and staked out a miner's claim. There they made a great fortune in diamonds before Cecil was twenty years old. Others, too, became rich in the diamond rush. Cecil Rhodes made good use of his money, as you will see.

He went back to England a strong young man, finished his college course, and then returned to Africa. He believed his fellow countrymen to be the greatest people on earth, and therefore he wanted to get all the land in Africa he could for England. He soon became the best known Englishman in South Africa. His friends called him the Old Man or the Chief.

Rhodes wanted to put the English flag far to the north of South Africa. England then owned Egypt,

and Rhodes wanted so much land for his country in Africa that a great railroad might be built from one end of Africa to the other, all on English territory, which would run from Cairo to Cape Town. He bought a vast tract of land in Africa, which was called Rhodesia in his honor, and which of course flew the flag of England. Although the Cape to Cairo railway is not yet completed, the part of it which extends north from Cape Town runs through Rhodesia.

Rhodes used his great wealth for the good of all. He spent much money trying to help the South African farmers by proving to them what were the best crops for that land. He had a farm of his own for experimenting with grains and vegetables. In this way he was able to give good advice.

Rhodes was a great friend to everyone. The natives of South Africa looked up to him as the chief of all the white men, and they often came to him for advice, even when they were planning a war on the whites.

Rhodes believed that English-speaking people and nations like them are best fitted to rule the world. England and America, he said, ought to be very good friends. He wanted them to understand each other better. He believed that it would be a fine thing to have young men from these countries go to college together, so that when they returned home they could spread their friendly feeling. Rhodes therefore left most of his fortune to pay the way of students from the

CECIL RHODES MADE A GREAT FORTUNE IN DIAMOND MINES IN AFRICA.

United States, Great Britain, and Germany to Oxford University. It is provided in his will that every three years two students may be sent from each of our states and territories to study at Oxford. They receive about two thousand dollars apiece each year to pay their expenses at the University. Can you think of any better way than that to spend a great fortune?

It was Rhodes's wish to be buried in his beloved Rhodesia. His tomb was cut in solid rock on a high point of land where he liked to stand and view the country. He called it the View of the World.

Many a young man in Germany, the United States, or the British Empire must thank Cecil Rhodes for his education at Oxford. It may be that this will help the nations of the world to peace and to a better understanding of one another.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. From an encyclopedia or other books, find out all you can about diamonds.

2. Make an outline map of Africa, and on it show the Cape-to-Cairo railway.

3. Can you give any good reasons why a large part of Africa should belong to England? What other lands belong to it?

4. What other great men have tried to spend their riches for good uses? What do you think of the way Rhodes spent his?

FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE, THE LADY WITH THE LAMP

One day a little English girl named Florence Nightingale was out driving, when she met an old shepherd, a friend of her family. He told the girl that Cap, his sheep dog, had been badly hurt by some boys who were throwing stones at him. The shepherd said that the dog was suffering so much that he might have to kill him. Florence went to see the poor dog and begged to be allowed to take him home, where she could nurse him back to health. Her request was granted, and in a few weeks Cap was well. He was a devoted friend to his kind little nurse.

Some years later Florence Nightingale, then a young woman, decided to study nursing. She went to Germany and other countries to see the hospitals there; and when she came home, she took charge of a hospital in London.

About this time war broke out between England and Russia, and there were thousands of wounded soldiers on the battlefields, uncared for. They needed medicine and nursing. Florence Nightingale said, "Send me to take care of the soldiers."

Now it was thought highly improper for a cultured girl like her to join the army as a nurse. Florence's

family and friends were greatly shocked when she went away to the battlefields in the Crimea (krĭ-mē′*a*). But she was willing to endure the hardship if she could do good.

When she arrived with a band of nurses, the English had just won a great but costly battle. The task of caring for the wounded fell to Miss Nightingale and her "Angel Band." She found the poor soldiers in a terrible condition. Thousands were dying who might have been saved. It was not long till she stopped this and had many of the wounded on the way to health. As she passed through the wards each night with her little lamp to see that all was being done for the sick soldiers they came to love her. "Here comes the lady with the lamp," they cried.

Then with so much to do, she overworked and was stricken with a terrible fever. The hut in which she lay ill was near the point where the Russians next attacked. But when the enemy learned this, they stopped firing in that direction, for it was known to the Russians that the English nurse gave aid to the wounded, friend and foe alike. Thus was the heroic nurse spared, and she became well again.

Throughout the war Miss Nightingale was an angel of mercy to the wounded and suffering of both sides. When peace came, she remained till the last wounded man was sent home. England wished to honor her by sending a warship to bring her home, but she

THE TASK OF CARING FOR THE WOUNDED FELL TO MISS NIGHTINGALE.

modestly refused and went home on an ordinary passenger ship.

Crowds of people gathered to greet the war nurse. She had a cordial invitation to visit Queen Victoria, and she spent some time with the royal family at the castle, where she secured a much needed rest.

It was the opinion among the naval and army officers that Florence Nightingale had given long-to-be-remembered service in that great war. She made nursing a respected work for women ever after. It was her labor that led to the forming of the Red Cross Society.

In such high regard was she held that, whenever England was making plans for hospitals and army nursing, the officers always came to her for advice. Once they showed her some plans for stables for army horses, and she told them to put a "window in each stall for the horses to look out of."

Florence Nightingale believed that men and women were born into this world to make it a better place for people to live in, and in everything she undertook you can see that her watchword was "service."

When, after a long life of splendid work, she died at the age of ninety, the entire nation wished to give her its highest honor by burying her in Westminster Abbey. But in accordance with her last wish she was laid at rest in the quiet village churchyard near her childhood home.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Do you think Florence Nightingale did right in going away as a war nurse when her family and friends objected? Give your reasons.

2. On a map locate the Crimea on the shores of the Black Sea.

3. Why do not nations always settle their disputes without going to war?

A Book You Will Like

Adams, E. C., and Foster, W. D.—*Heroines of Modern Progress*, pp. 120-146.

CLARA BARTON AND THE RED CROSS

You may have heard of some terrible flood that destroyed a city or a raging fire that burned down the homes of many people. Sometimes there is an earthquake that shakes down the walls of buildings and ruins property. Then the people of a whole city must have help. Many have lost their homes and their clothing; they have no food and no place where it could be cooked. Perhaps hundreds have been injured, and everywhere are distress and need. In such places the Red Cross Society works.

When the Mississippi Valley was flooded, the Red Cross came at once to the aid of the people there. Trains brought in doctors, nurses, food, and medicine. Soup kitchens were set up quickly, where people could have meals served to them free. Calls were sent out to other towns for money, clothing, and aid of all kinds.

In time of war the Red Cross is at the battle front to relieve wounded soldiers. In many schools in the United States the children belong to the Junior Red Cross and are taught to give first aid. No work in the world is more worth while than helping those who are suffering.

The Red Cross of America was founded by a woman named Clara Barton. Miss Barton's father was a soldier.

and she heard much about the suffering in war times. She learned a great deal about nursing as a girl. When she was only eleven years old, her favorite brother was hurt in an accident and was an invalid for two years. All that time, with only a half day's vacation, Clara stayed near his sick room and cared for him until he was well. Everyone said that she was a born nurse.

Clara Barton taught school for several years. She also worked in the Patent Office in Washington. It was in Washington at the railroad station, when the Civil War broke out, that she saw the first carloads of wounded soldiers brought to the capital. She helped care for these suffering men, wrote letters to their dear ones at home, and collected bandages and medicine for them. She had a habit of going aboard the boats that came up the river and there nursing the sick and wounded. Though she was a very shy young woman, she made up her mind that she must go to the wounded on the battlefield. She said, "I could save many lives if I were near when the soldiers fall."

Miss Barton had to go to many different officers to get permission to do as she wished. They all said, "The battlefield is no place for a woman."

"I am not afraid," said Clara Barton. "I am the daughter of a soldier and know what I am doing."

At last she had permission to go; and to the end of the terrible war she was with the army, taking the

CLARA BARTON SAVED MANY SOLDIERS WHO WERE INJURED IN BATTLE.

place of a mother to many dying men and saving many others by her tender nursing. One day as she was going into the enemy lines, a general asked her if she wanted a guard. "No," said Clara Barton, "I am the best protected person on the field." She was well named the Angel of the Battlefield.

This brave woman slept on the ground in a tent and endured all the hardships of war, but she was never injured, though one day a bullet passed between her uplifted arm and her body.

When the war was over, she went to Europe. In Switzerland she found a group of people banded together to help soldiers who were wounded in battle. They called themselves the Red Cross Society. They said, "We carry a white flag with a red cross on it and are allowed to go on the battlefield wherever we are needed. We care for every wounded man, whether friend or foe."

"This is just what I have been looking for," said Miss Barton. "Why can't we have a society like this in the United States?"

"We have asked your people many times to join us," they said, "but they have always refused."

Miss Barton studied the Red Cross movement and first-aid work and went to the battlefields while there was war between France and Germany. She helped Grand Duchess Louise of Germany when the Duchess threw open her castle and grounds to wounded soldiers.

After Miss Barton came back to the United States, she worked many years to get our nation to join the Red Cross. At last she succeeded. When the Red Cross was started here we were at peace. Miss Barton said, "We can use the Red Cross in times of peace, too." She called upon the workers when forest fires spread over parts of our country and drove people from their homes. Red Cross nurses helped to drive the yellow fever from the South. There was always something to be done.

Miss Barton wrote several books about the Red Cross. One of them is called *Red Cross in Peace and War.*

Clara Barton did not live to see the World War. Then Red Cross societies were formed in every little town and school in the United States so that women and children might work for our boys across the sea.

Clara Barton passed through many dangers in trying to help others, but she lived to be ninety-one years of age. Wherever we see the sign of the Red Cross, we honor her name. It is said that the treasure she most loved was a red enameled pin in the shape of a cross, given her while she was in Europe.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did the Red Cross start?
2. What do you think of the Red Cross nurse's work in war?

3. How does the Red Cross help in time of peace?

4. Tell about persons or regions that have been aided by the Red Cross.

Books You Will Like

Adams, E. C., and Foster, W. D.—*Heroines of Modern Progress*, pp. 147-177.

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 402-406.

Parkman, M. R.—*Heroines of Service*, pp. 79–94.

Wade, M. H.—*Light Bringers*, pp. 64-111.

LOUIS PASTEUR LEARNS NATURE'S SECRETS

One of the great men of the world, whom every boy and girl will admire, was Louis Pasteur (pȧs′tûr′), a Frenchman. His discoveries have probably saved more lives than Napoleon destroyed. In those days doctors were very ignorant about the cause of disease. They merely guessed and experimented and were thankful if a few of their patients got well. Louis Pasteur made discoveries and showed men the truth about disease, but they were very slow to believe him.

"Send us help!" said the silk raisers in southern France to their Government. "Our silkworms are sick and dying, and we shall be ruined. We have tried everything we know and have failed to stop the disease."

Now the French Government knew nothing about silkworms or about disease, and the doctors were almost as ignorant. Someone who knew Pasteur, the great chemist, said: "Louis Pasteur is the one to do it. He is not afraid to try something new."

Pasteur went to the silk country. With great patience he studied the habits of the silkworms under a microscope till he proved that the sick ones gave the disease to the well ones by crawling over them or over

their food. He stopped the disease and saved the silk industry of France. How happy the silk farmers were!

Pasteur had discovered that there were such things as microbes, or germs, too small to be seen without a strong magnifying glass, which caused disease. Very few people in all the world had ever dreamed that this was true. Pasteur began to grow these tiny microbes, or dust plants, and to study them. But people would not accept this new knowledge.

Pasteur experimented on white mice and rabbits to prove what he could do to save human lives from disease microbes. First he gave the microbes to an animal and showed that it soon became sick. Then he studied how to kill the microbes and save the life of the animal. In this way he learned to vaccinate against various diseases.

The sheep were often sick, but the sheep owners did not believe that Pasteur could help them. "We challenge you to a trial," they said, and Pasteur accepted their challenge.

They gave him all the well sheep he needed to prove that his vaccination would prevent sickness. He vaccinated twenty-five sheep against a disease called anthrax. Then he gave them the anthrax germs. At the same time he gave the germs to twenty-five other well sheep that had not been vaccinated.

"Now," said Pasteur, "the flock of twenty-five

PASTEUR VACCINATED THE SHEEP TO PROVE THAT HE COULD PREVENT SICKNESS.

sheep that have not been vaccinated will die on a certain day, while the others, that were vaccinated, will not even be sick." How the farmers laughed at him!

The believers and the unbelievers came back to the farm on the appointed day to celebrate a victory or to laugh at a defeat. When Pasteur arrived at the farm at two o'clock in the afternoon, he was received with cheers, for all the vaccinated sheep were in perfect health. Pasteur had won the contest by proof that could not be doubted.

From this beginning of the knowledge of germs, other men have gone on in search of more truth about microbes, till now the whole world knows better how to fight disease and save human life and also how to use microbes to aid man in many ways.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do you know about silkworms?
2. What is vaccination?
3. Why should Pasteur be called great?
4. What are some diseases that we can now prevent?

A Book You Will Like

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Early Men of Science*, pp. 205–212.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT, THE ROUGH RIDER

Theodore Roosevelt was one of the most popular men who ever became President of the United States. Like Benjamin Franklin, he was interested in many things. He was a daring hunter, a fearless soldier, an author, and a splendid statesman.

Roosevelt's great-grandfathers came to America with the Dutch settlers. His father was a glass merchant. His mother was born in the South. The Civil War was raging when Roosevelt was a little boy, and he remembered that his mother believed in slavery while his father did not.

Theodore lived in a beautiful home in New York City and had everything to make him happy except one. He was not well, and while other boys ran about and played, he had to rest and read. Many nights he lay awake because he had asthma, which made it hard for him to breathe well lying down. His father sometimes carried him in his arms or took him driving in the country to help him pass the night. It looked as if he might be ill all his life.

Theodore did not go to school regularly until he went to college. He learned by reading books and by traveling in Europe. He liked to read about great

men, for he believed that some day he would be well and strong and able to do something worth while.

One day he found himself alone with some rough boys, who teased and abused him. He was quite unable to defend himself. This so angered and disgusted him that he began taking boxing lessons and kept at them until he felt sure that he could defend himself anywhere.

Theodore loved birds and animals and planned to spend his life studying them. He and some other boys started a collection of their own. During the years he was in college, he spent his summers in the Maine woods with a hunter. There he found that he loved to rough it and that the outdoor life made him stronger.

However, when he left college, the doctor tested his heart and advised him to live a quiet life. "If I have to live that way, I don't care how soon I die," said Roosevelt, and he went ahead doing what he wanted to do. His whole life was active. Indeed he said that everyone ought to "live the strenuous life."

Some of Roosevelt's first hunting trips were in North Dakota. There he owned a cattle ranch and rode the range with the cowboys. To be respected by the other men, he had to ride long hours in the saddle, live on rough food, and sometimes knock down a bully or two. He slept in a bunk on the wall. At first the cowboys laughed at his big spectacles and called him

ROOSEVELT WENT ON LONG RIDES TO ROUND UP THE CATTLE.

"four-eyes." But soon they grew to like and respect the "game little tenderfoot." Roosevelt shot buffaloes and elk and grizzly bears and wrote several books about his trips.

At one time Roosevelt had charge of the police force of New York City. Often in this great city there had been police officers who were dishonest, but Roosevelt was not one of these. He visited some of the dirty sections of the city and helped make the landlords improve the houses. He tried to have crime punished wherever he found it, whether the person who committed the crime was rich or poor.

Roosevelt earned the title of Colonel in the war with Spain, part of which was fought in Cuba. His soldiers, or Rough Riders, were college boys, cowboys, and rough men from the mining camps, who went to Cuba to fight. They had drilled on horseback in Texas. When they reached Cuba, both horses and men had to swim ashore from the boats. They camped that night with a jungle on one side of them.

The next day they marched among tall trees, with the air hot and smothering. "Where's the war?" they asked.

Roosevelt, who was riding ahead, picked up a piece of barbed wire and said: "The Spaniards are near. This wire has been cut this morning."

Soon they heard a shot and then another. The Spaniards were using smokeless powder, and it was

some time before the Americans could tell where they were. At last Roosevelt found that the shots came from some tile buildings on the hill. He ordered his men forward, and before long they had captured the tile buildings. So daring were they and so quickly did they rush upon the enemy that the Spaniards said, "They tried to catch us with their hands."

Roosevelt was ordered to charge San Juan (săn hwän') Hill. When he came to the top, he found a barbed-wire fence. He jumped it on his horse and called to his men to follow. When he had gone a short distance, he saw that they were not coming. He rode back and taunted them with being cowards. "We didn't hear you, Colonel; lead on!" they said. "We will follow."

At full speed they rushed through the fire of Spanish bullets. Many were killed, but the enemy began to run. Two of them fired straight at Roosevelt but missed him. On he went with his Rough Riders to victory.

Roosevelt's men faced sickness as well as bullets in Cuba, and many of them did not return. Roosevelt always stood by his men. His courage made him famous in the United States. When he came back, he was made Governor of New York, and later he became President of the United States.

As President, he was as full of courage as he had been in battle. He did not fear to tackle any hard problem that arose. The Panama Canal was built while Roosevelt was in office.

Whenever Roosevelt had a vacation, he spent it in the mountains with such men as John Burroughs and John Muir, studying wild life.

When his term as President was over, Roosevelt took his son Kermit and several learned men and went hunting in Africa. He went to a place where few white men had been before and where herds of wild animals were to be found.

As the train started into the wilderness, Roosevelt sat on a seat fixed on the cowcatcher, so that he would not miss anything. He saw many strange birds: sun birds, bee eaters, and weaver birds. The train nearly ran over a hyena. They passed herds of giraffes feeding on the tree tops, and a group of antelopes strayed on to the track. A long-tailed yellow monkey jumped from one tree to another. A herd of zebras seemed to look at the train with amazement.

Roosevelt visited the ranch of an Englishman deep in the wilds of Africa. Here lions were the terror of the neighborhood. When they were hungry, they sometimes carried off the natives or attacked men on horseback. Many of the white men had come near losing their lives because of the lions.

Roosevelt was not afraid. He was eager to shoot a lion. He rode out with his men one morning and came upon lion tracks. Two dogs ran ahead and showed signs of smelling a lion in a path through the brush. The natives shouted and threw stones into the

brush. Roosevelt saw a glimpse of yellow hide and fired. Two lions ran out, but they were only cubs. Suddenly in the distance the hunters saw a large lion. They rode toward it on horseback. When the lion saw them coming, it stopped and turned on them. There it stood facing them, lashing its tail and showing its great teeth.

A brave little black boy ran up to hold Roosevelt's horse. Theodore slipped to the ground and faced the angry monster. He rested his gun on the boy's shoulder and fired. The lion fell over but got up again, snarling and gnashing its teeth. The second shot killed it, and soon Roosevelt stood proudly over his first big lion skin.

Later he killed a huge hippopotamus that had swum under his boat in the river and nearly upset it. Out on the plain he met an angry rhinoceros and succeeded in putting a bullet through its tough hide. Many skins were preserved by the men with him and sent to museums in the United States.

A few years after this Roosevelt went to South America. Here in the terrible jungle along the Amazon River, he shot the South American tiger, or jaguar. He was bitten by insects and fire ants. There were snakes and poisonous spiders in the jungle. Even some of the fish in the rivers were dangerous. The sun was so hot that his men became ill. At the end of each day, after he had wrapped himself in netting and put

on gloves to keep off the insects, he wrote his story, so that now we may read it for ourselves. Roosevelt and his son explored a river which is now called Rio Theodoro, or Theodore River. On the way home he nearly died of fever.

Roosevelt spent the last years of his life writing and speaking for good causes. His books make excellent reading for any boy or girl.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do you think of the way in which Roosevelt got his education?

2. How can you prove that Roosevelt had courage?

3. In what part of Roosevelt's life would you like most to have been with him? Why?

4. Tell some of the important things Roosevelt did. Did any of them help other people? If so, in what way?

Books You Will Like

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 415-427.

Morgan, James—*Theodore Roosevelt: The Boy and the Man.*

Pearson, E. L.—*Theodore Roosevelt.*

Roosevelt, Theodore—*Theodore Roosevelt's Letters to his Children.*

PEARY AND AMUNDSEN REACH THE POLES

On a globe in your schoolroom find the north pole and the south pole. In the regions around these poles, you know, it is always cold, and there is an ice sheet that never melts. In winter the nights are very long, and in summer there are many hours of sunlight.

No one can live long at the poles, for it is so cold that nothing can be found to eat. But people do live far north of our country on the way to the north pole, in a country called Greenland. There we find the Eskimo in his house of sods or ice and snow. He is used to the cold, dresses in furs, and eats much fat to keep himself warm. You probably know all about him and his Eskimo dogs.

For many years men had been trying to reach the poles, but it was only a few years ago that they were first seen by men.

Robert Edwin Peary was about thirty years old when he made his first trip to Greenland. For nearly twenty years he spent his time learning how to travel in this cold region and how to reach the north pole.

Peary's wife went with him to Greenland, and here their little daughter was born. She was given an

Eskimo name meaning *snow baby*. The Snow Baby did not go to the north pole, but she was the first white child born so far north.

Peary used Eskimo dogs for his trips over the ice and snow. He took Eskimo men with him, for they were used to the climate. With every trip he made he got a little nearer to the pole. Once his feet were frozen so badly that some of his toes had to be taken off. His men brought him back on a sled. Once he stayed four years in the cold country, but he had not yet reached the pole.

On his next trip he set off from the United States in a ship given him by his friends, called the *Roosevelt*. He landed in Greenland and made his last dash for the pole. His party of white men and Eskimos drove their dog sleds over the snow day after day. Before them were regions of glittering ice. They sometimes had to cut their way through them with picks and shovels or blow paths with dynamite.

At last their instruments showed that they were within one hundred twenty-five miles of the north pole. Peary knew that he must save all the food and supplies he could to help him get home. He therefore sent back all his party except his negro servant, four Eskimos, and forty dogs.

The last hundred twenty-five miles were made in five days. When they were actually within reach of the pole, they saw only a wide plain of snow and ice.

It was on April 6, 1909, that they stood at the spot which is the north pole. With great joy in his heart, Peary planted the United States flag there in the snow. On the way home he and his men were nearly lost, but at last they came safely through to enjoy the honors they had won.

Two years after this there was a race between two men to see who would first reach the south pole. Captain Robert Scott of England had been trying for many years to reach the south pole, and now another explorer joined in the race.

Roald Amundsen (ä′mŭn-sĕn), whose home was in Norway, had been about to set out to find the north pole when the news came that Peary had already found it. He therefore quietly turned his ships to the south. Not even his crew knew where he was going until they were well on the way. On board, he had a hundred Eskimo dogs. After a long voyage he cast anchor near an ice plain, still many miles from the pole. His men spent the long winter, which was June, July, and August there, in a cave which they dug in the deep snow.

Amundsen set off the next spring with five men, fifty-two dogs, and four sledges loaded with food. There were great cracks in the ice, and some of the dogs and sledges fell in. After seven weeks of hard travel over ice and snow, they reached the south pole December 14, 1911. You will like to read of their many

THIS PICTURE TELLS YOU THE NAME OF THE AIRSHIP IN WHICH AMUNDSEN FLEW OVER THE NORTH POLE.

adventures. They are told in Amundsen's book. Amundsen put up the flag of Norway at the pole and made a safe journey back to his boat.

Meanwhile, Robert Scott with sixty men, some of them famous men of science, had also started to the south pole. They tried to make the first dash with motor sledges, but these soon got out of order. Then they tried ponies, but they had not enough food for them. At last they fell back on their dogs, and after many narrow escapes they, too, reached the south pole. There floated the flag of Amundsen. You can imagine how disappointed Scott's men were! They had suffered much and struggled bravely, and in the end they had lost the honor of being first at the south pole.

But the rest of the story is still sadder. On the way home the party was lost. They were frozen to death and never got back to their ships.

Some time afterward, a party of men were sent to find them and their records. Scott had made a brave fight, but Amundsen had the honor of reaching the south pole first.

In 1926 Amundsen flew in an airship over the north pole and landed safely in Alaska. This was only a few days after Commander Richard Byrd, an American airman, had made the first airplane journey to the north pole. It is to such daring men that we owe our knowledge of many out-of-the-way places on the earth.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Why was it hard to reach the poles?
2. What did Peary find at the north pole?
3. Why are Eskimo dogs better than ponies for travel in the polar lands?
4. Has any one ever flown to the south pole?
5. Find out from magazines about Amundsen's and Byrd's trips over the north pole.

Books You Will Like

Parkman, M. R.—*Heroes of To-Day*, pp. 31–50.
Wade, M. H.—*Light Bringers*, pp. 1–63.

ANDREW CARNEGIE, THE RICH GIVER

Perhaps you get books from a public library in your city which has the name *Carnegie* (kär-nĕg′ĭ) over the door. This means that the building was paid for by a wealthy man who wanted the people in your town to have all the books they can read. His name was Andrew Carnegie.

When the little Scotch boy Andrew came to America, he was very poor and not very strong. He went to work in a cotton mill for a dollar and a half a week. He loved books and read eagerly everything he could find in print. When he was fourteen, he went about delivering telegrams. While he was waiting for messages, he listened to the ticking machine and learned how to understand the code. Soon he was able to take and send messages himself.

A man who sends telegrams must be very careful. It is well if he knows about a good many things so that he will not make mistakes in taking messages. Andrew had read enough to be a great help to people sending telegrams, and this made him a fine telegraph operator.

At last the boy was given a place in the office to help the superintendent, whose name was T. A. Scott

Scott taught Andrew to send out the messages which told the engineers on the trains when to start and where to stop. The lad soon learned how to do it as well as his chief. In time he allowed Andrew to send messages and sign them T.A.S.

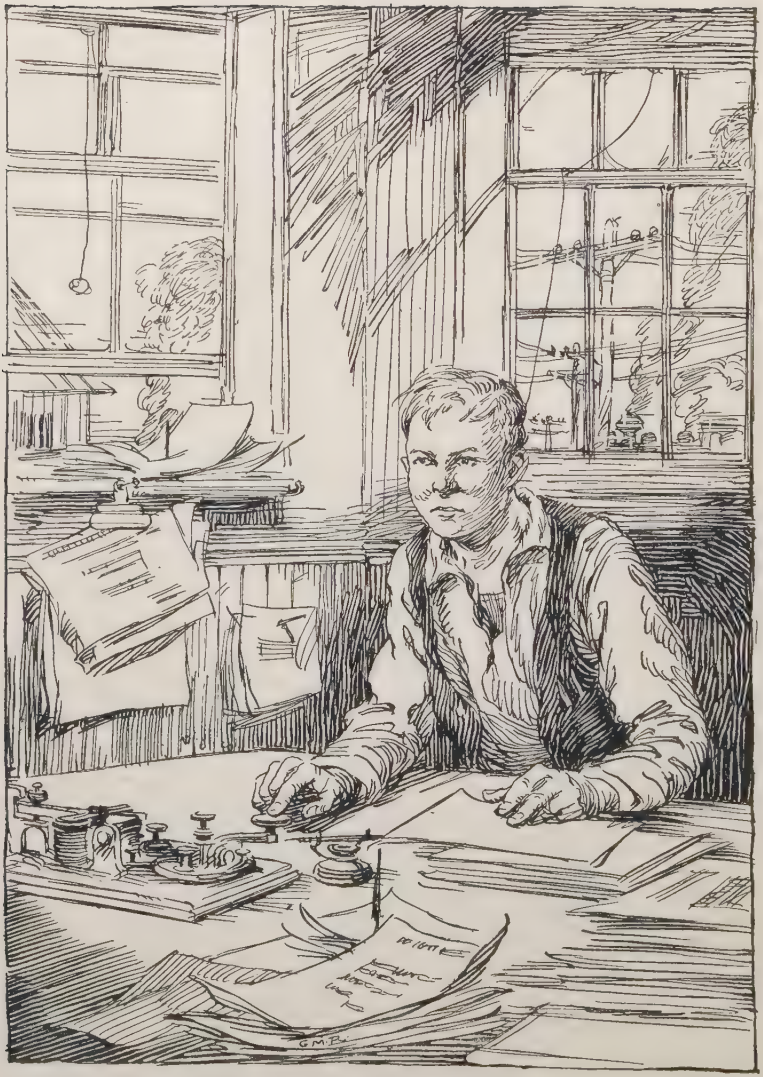
One day there was a wreck on the road, and Scott was kept from the office. He was not there to start the trains, and Andrew did not know what to do. The trains were already late, and the boy knew that the orders should go out. Should he start the trains or not? At last he decided that it would be all right to send the orders as usual and sign the initials T.A.S.

Soon Scott came in. "Come, come, Andy," he said, "how did those trains get out? You know no one except me has any right to send out trains."

"Mr. Scott, you were not here, and I gave the orders just as usual," said Andrew. "I couldn't sit here like a dummy with everything getting mixed up, when I knew what ought to be done."

His chief did not praise him; instead, he looked displeased. But Andrew heard him laugh and tell another man: "What do you think that little white-haired Scotchman did the other day? He ran every train on this division."

Andrew feared his boldness had lost him his job, but instead Scott made him his private secretary. The boy did his work so well that in time he became superintendent himself.



ANDREW SOON LEARNED TO SEND OUT MESSAGES TO THE ENGINEERS ON THE TRAINS.

One day Scott lent him money to buy several shares of stock. Andrew paid him back in small amounts from his savings. Then he saw how money earns more money, for every little while he received money paid him on his stock. From that day he became interested in saving and letting his money make more money for him.

On one occasion a man came into the office with two small models of sleeping cars rolled up in a cloth. People who traveled in those days had to get off the train at night or sleep sitting up. Andrew was much interested in the little sleeping cars. "Some day we shall have sleeping cars like those on all the roads," he said.

"I need money to help build them," said the man. "Can I sell you an interest in them?"

Andrew borrowed the money to buy an interest in the sleeping cars and paid it back a little each month. Many years afterward he owned shares in the Pullman Company, which makes our beautiful sleeping cars today.

Meanwhile, Andrew had learned a great deal about railroads and saw that many things were needed. When he had saved some money, he said: "I am going into business for myself. What shall I do?"

As he was thinking it over he saw a wooden bridge burn one day. He said: "Think of the time that will be lost while this bridge is being replaced. I am going

to build bridges that cannot burn. I am going to build steel railroad bridges."

His idea pleased the president of the railroad and his old friend Scott. They believed in Andrew and were willing to buy shares in his company to help him get a start. When he wanted to know how to make the very best of steel, he went to England to learn a new way.

His business finally grew into the steel city of Homestead, Pennsylvania. When at last he sold it, he had hundreds of millions of dollars and was one of the richest men the world had known.

Andrew Carnegie thought: "I can never spend all this money myself. I want to do all the good I possibly can with it."

In his homeland, Scotland, there were schools and colleges that needed money. He gave them a great deal. He gave money to take care of professors and teachers when they were old, because they had devoted their lives to teaching and helping others instead of making money for themselves.

Perhaps you have heard of the brave man who went into a burning building to save two little children. He was so badly burned that he died, and his wife and children were left poor and alone. Someone told the story of his bravery to the people in charge of the Carnegie Hero Fund, and they sent money to help the family of the hero. Many other men who have

been crippled by doing a brave deed to save another's life have been helped and rewarded by the Carnegie Hero Fund.

There are several fine schools in the United States for young men and women, built by Andrew Carnegie. But best of all are the fifty million dollars used to provide libraries for the boys and girls who love to read as well as the poor boy Andrew did. He believed anyone who will work and think and read can educate himself, and he did all he could to help those who could not buy books for themselves.

There are many good and wealthy men who have given a great deal of money to make the world better, but, up to this time, few men have given as much as Andrew Carnegie.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How was the boy Andrew different from other boys?
2. Would you have ordered out trains when your chief was not there? Why?
3. What did Andrew do with his money?
4. How would you spend a hundred million dollars?

Books You Will Like

Tappan, E. M.—*Heroes of Progress*, pp. 228-237.
Wildman, Edwin—*Famous Leaders of Industry*, pp. 27-40.

MARK TWAIN, THE MAN WHO MAKES US LAUGH

Have you ever read about Tom Sawyer and Huckleberry Finn? Perhaps some of the boys have. At any rate, you will like to hear of the man who wrote stories about them. We call him Mark Twain, but his real name was Samuel Clemens.

When Samuel was young, there was a naughty boy who lived near him, who was always getting him into trouble. Sam was asked not to play with this boy, but sometimes they slipped away and had a good deal of fun together. In *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* and *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* are stories of some of the things they did.

Samuel had a good home and was taught very early that a gentleman never breaks a promise. He usually did as he was told, but once in a while he forgot. When he was a very little boy, his aunt had on her back porch some orange and lemon trees growing in pots. Samuel had tasted many oranges, but he was sure that those on his aunt's trees must be better than any others. He watched them as they grew from little green balls to big, golden oranges. He had promised not to pick them, but he hoped some day an orange

would drop off. He used to jump on the porch very hard to shake the tree. He hung about and watched it so long that one day the nicest looking orange got the best of him. He lay down flat on the porch and bit out a big piece with his teeth. It was very sour and puckered his mouth. He went home and told his mother what he had done, and she sent him back to tell his aunt. His aunt punished him by making him eat the rest of the sour orange.

Sam did not like to go to school, for it was not a very interesting school. He got into mischief one day, and the teacher sent him out to get a stick. He knew that she meant to punish him with it, so he looked about and took back to her a long, curly shaving. The teacher was angry and sent another boy for a real stick, and Sam was punished severely. Ever afterward he hated school.

When Sam was eleven years old, his father died, and he promised his mother that he would do anything she asked if he did not have to go to school any more. They were moving about so much that she let him have his way, but Sam had to earn his own living. He also studied hard to get an education.

One day, as he was walking down the street, the wind blew the leaf of a book in his face. On it he read the story of Joan of Arc. It was only part of the story, but he was so interested in it that he read all the history books he could get his hands on to find out the

rest of the story. In this way he found that he liked to read.

Like Benjamin Franklin, Samuel Clemens worked in a printing office, where he learned how to set type.

He liked to go to the theater near his home. It was not a "movie" theater but one where real plays were acted. There was a rule at home that he must be in by ten o'clock. He waited for the curfew bell to ring and then ran home as fast as he could. Of course he never saw the end of the plays, but he probably imagined them. With some of his friends, he once got up a company to act plays, but all of the boys wanted to be Jocko the Ape, and none of them would be the girl. The company soon broke up.

After Sam grew older, he became a pilot on a boat on the Mississippi River. He learned to know the names of all the small river towns and all the places where the river was shallow. The men used to measure the depth of the water, and if it was safe, they called out, "Mark twain," meaning "Mark twice," or safe water. Sam liked the sound of those words, and when he began to write, he used Mark Twain for his pen name.

Mark Twain's first famous story, which he wrote in San Francisco, was about "the jumping frog." It was written after he had gone to the far West with his brother. It made everyone laugh and was copied in newspapers all over the country.

Mark Twain was an author who wrote about many

WHEN MARK TWAIN WAS A YOUNG MAN, HE BECAME A PILOT.

different things. *Life on the Mississippi* is a funny account of the days when he was a pilot. *Roughing It* tells about his life in the West. Children all like *The Prince and the Pauper*, for it is the tale of a poor boy and a rich boy who changed places. Mark Twain wrote many other books that make people laugh, but his best book is not funny. It is the story of his favorite heroine, Joan of Arc, and is one of the best books ever written about her.

Mark Twain married a very sweet woman. She loved his fun and always called him Youth. He was very fond of his three little daughters. In the summer they used to go to a beautiful farm. Some distance from the house he had a little workroom with many windows. He said that it looked like the pilot house on the river boat. After a good time with his family, he went every day to this room to write his books. When it was supper time, someone rang a bell to let him know that his work hours were over.

Mark Twain put all his money into a company that published books. One day the firm failed, and he lost everything he had. If he gave up his home and all his property, he could pay only half what he owed.

"I must pay my debts. I will take a trip around the world and lecture to earn the money," he said.

He took his wife and one daughter with him. They were gone five years, but he paid back every cent he owed. When he came back from the long trip, he

mourned the loss of a daughter, who had died while he was gone. Mark Twain made a great deal of fun for other people, but in his old age he had much sadness.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What are the funniest books you have read?
2. Have your teacher read parts of *Tom Sawyer* to you.
3. Would you like to be a pilot on a Mississippi River steamer? Why?
4. Name as many of Mark Twain's books as you can.
5. Would you rather go to college or take a trip around the world? Give your reasons for your choice.

A Book You Will Like

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 386-399.

WOODROW WILSON, OUR WORLD-WAR PRESIDENT

When Woodrow Wilson, the great war President, was a boy in Virginia, everybody called him Tommy. He was a frail child and had to wear spectacles when he was very young. Therefore he could not hunt or trap or belong to a gang. The springboard and trapeze were not a part of his play, but he sometimes played ball. Tommy's health denied him the rough sports that most boys enjoy.

But Thomas loved to read. In his home were many books, and there was much reading aloud of Dickens and the *Arabian Nights*, of Sinbad or Captain Kidd. The boy often dreamed that he was a ship captain and a good sailor, chasing pirate ships in the South Seas.

Thomas was living in Augusta, Georgia, when the Civil War closed, and one day General Robert E. Lee came to the city. The lad's heroes had all been in books, but here was a real, live one. It was a great day for Thomas as he helped cheer the famous General. When he became a man, he wrote the life of Lee, the hero of the South.

When young Wilson was sixteen, he had read so much that he was ready for college. Here he was a

shining light as a debater, a fine scholar, and editor of the college paper. His frail body could not endure the rough college sports, but he was manager of a baseball team.

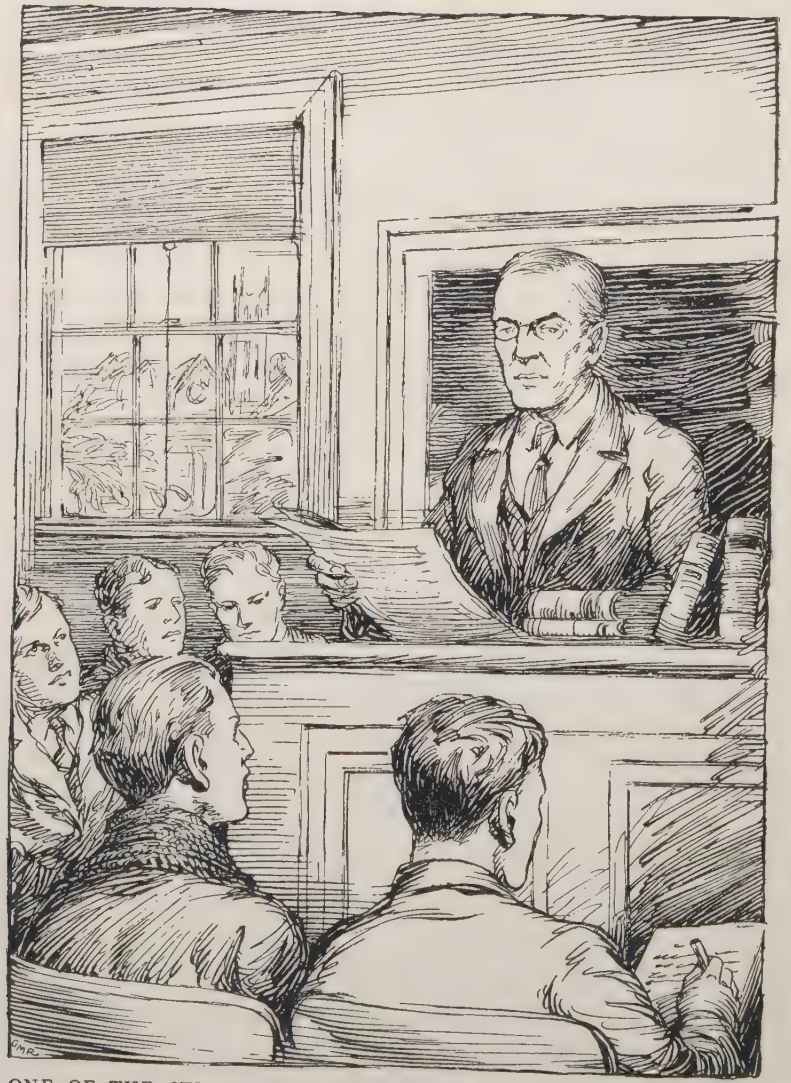
When anyone wanted to find Wilson, he went to his room, and generally there he would be, with his elbows on his knees and his nose in a book. The boys liked him, but they never really knew him well. He liked to talk, to debate, and to write, and he usually won contests of this kind.

About this time he decided that he did not like to be called Tommy or Thomas; so after that he wrote his name Woodrow Wilson.

After his college days Woodrow Wilson, with his fine education, became a lawyer and later a great teacher. His students all liked him. Later he became a college president, then Governor of New Jersey, and at last President of the United States. All the time he was thinking and writing about our government.

It was while he was President that the terrible World War broke out in Europe in 1914. President Wilson was a man who loved peace, and he tried with all his power as a writer and speaker to keep our country out of the war. At last, however, in 1917 Germany so boldly destroyed our ships and killed our people that the United States was forced to take up arms.

All during those terrible days, when thousands of men were being killed every week by cannon fire,



ONE OF THE STUDIES WILSON TAUGHT THE COLLEGE STUDENTS WAS HISTORY.

torpedoes, or poison gas, Woodrow Wilson worked and prayed that good might come out of the war. He was trying to answer the question, "How can the world get rid of war forever?" His fine words of faith in the right were sent daily over the world, and men everywhere, tired of war, listened. They said, "Woodrow Wilson is pointing the way to everlasting peace."

At last our soldiers' bayonets and our President's words of faith and hope helped end the fighting. Peace came; and millions of people, the world over, shouted and laughed and cried for joy. The terrible war was over.

Then it was that Woodrow Wilson stood forth as a great man of history. He helped the fighting nations to make a new kind of government, called the League of Nations. The League of Nations, Wilson believed, would help prevent another war in the world and protect the weaker nations. It would get nations to talk over their troubles before fighting about them.

Woodrow Wilson worked so hard to get our country to join the League that he injured his health. The Senate refused to agree with him; and, to his great disappointment, the United States did not enter the League. Wilson was broken-hearted. He lived only a few years after that. However, the League of Nations which he helped to make still lives. How much good it may do in the years to come, no one can foretell. Millions of men everywhere in the world are deeply grateful for the noble life and work of the scholar and peacemaker, Woodrow Wilson.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What other great American had poor health as a boy? Why should every boy try to become strong in body? How can he do so?

2. Do you think people or countries that cannot agree should talk over their troubles before starting a fight? Why?

3. What is the object of the League of Nations?

Books You Will Like

Morgan, James—*Our Presidents*, (school edition) pp. 271-286.

Rowell, C. W.—*Leaders of the Great War*, pp. 298-332.

Wildman, Edwin—*Famous Leaders of Character*, pp. 195-208.

JOHN J. PERSHING, COMMANDER IN THE WORLD WAR

Jack Pershing was a poor boy who grew up in Missouri. His real name was John Joseph. He worked hard to learn his lessons and later taught school. He earned his training as a soldier at West Point by standing first in his examinations. He said: "Of course my country is at peace, and I shall not spend all my life as a soldier. I shall serve long enough to pay for my education and then resign from the army." Little did he dream what a great service he would be asked to do for his country.

An Indian chief was then making trouble in New Mexico, and after Pershing was graduated, he was sent west to deal with these Indians. Pershing and his men had to be ready at a moment's notice to go after the red men. Food enough for ten days was always waiting to be packed on mule-back, and every man had his blanket and rifle and horse ready to start. When orders came, they rode over the desert, never knowing what bush might be hiding an Indian, for the Indians knew how to disguise themselves with brush and feathers so that they could not be seen.

Pershing made a wonderful leader. He was tall, digni-

fied, cheery, and afraid of nothing. He had many medals for marksmanship, which showed how well he could handle a gun. When the Spanish-American War came, he, like Roosevelt, was sent to Cuba. He is said to have been one of the coolest of all men under fire.

In the Philippines he fought the savage Moros, who shut him and his soldiers in the crater of a dead volcano. The Moros thought that no one could ever climb over the rim of this volcano, but Pershing and his men did it and took the Moros prisoners.

Jack Pershing was such a fine soldier that at last he was made a Brigadier-General. In the halls of Congress the day this was done was a young woman, the daughter of a senator from a Western state. She said: "How I should like to meet that man. He must be the bravest man in the world!" Later they met, and she became his wife.

When the World War came and the United States was ready to train her army, President Wilson thought long and hard about who would be the best leader to be in command. Then he chose John Joseph Pershing to go to France in charge of our soldiers. Thousands of our young men were called from farms, factories, and colleges to go to France to help fight the Germans. Germany sent out U-boats, or submarines, to blow up our ships. It thought that our boys could not reach France, but they did, two million and more.

Pershing was met in Paris by General Foch. He was

IN THE PHILIPPINES PERSHING FOUGHT THE SAVAGE MOROS.

taken to the tomb of the famous Napoleon and to the resting place of Lafayette. There he laid a wreath of roses on the tomb of the great friend of America.

Pershing found that there was plenty of work for him to do. Our boys were coming to France, ten thousand a day. Some of them were trained, and some of them were not. Airplanes, tanks, powder, and other supplies had to be taken care of. Training camps had to be built for great numbers of men.

The Germans said: "The United States will send money and food, but her men will not fight. We have nothing to fear."

The boys from the United States said: "We have come across the sea to put an end to war. We want this to be the last great war the world will ever see."

Pershing said: "Germany can be beaten. Germany must be beaten."

The French soldiers were weary with hard fighting, and the Germans were moving toward Paris, the French capital. The Germans were only thirty-nine miles away. The roar of their guns could be heard, and shells from long-distance guns were bursting in the city streets. German airplanes were flying over the city, hurling bombs down on its citizens. If Paris were taken by the Germans, it would almost end the war.

Truckloads of United States troops were hurried through France to the battle line. When they got there, the French commander told them he feared they

were too late. But our boys replied: "We have come three thousand miles to fight. Let us help you."

They attacked the German battle line; and with the new courage and help they brought, the French succeeded in driving the Germans back from Paris.

Everywhere in France there was joy, for they knew more Americans were coming. There were many bloody battles, but at last the Germans were on the run, and their armies were driven across the Rhine River into their own land. Germany was beaten, and the World War was at an end.

Wherever the Americans fought, they showed the courage that Pershing had asked of them. They called him the Big Chief. Whatever Pershing did he did with all his might, and so did the brave boys who went with him.

The World War was the most terrible war in history because of the airplanes, the poison gas, and the long-distance guns. Millions of men laid down their lives. Thousands of our brave men were among them, but they helped win the war. Those who remember the World War will do all they can to keep the world from ever having another.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How does a submarine move under water?
2. What training did Pershing have for a general?

3. What kind of boy or man do you think makes the best leader?

4. Why did Pershing visit the tomb of Lafayette?

5. Why should we try to put a stop to war?

Books You Will Like

Morris Charles—*Heroes of the Army*, pp. 348-354.
Rowell, C. W.—*Leaders of the Great War*, pp. 256-298.
Wade, M. H.—*Leaders of Liberty*, pp. 111-161.

HERBERT C. HOOVER, THE MAN WHO "FED THE WORLD"

There is a man who is said to have "fed the world." During the World War, the terrible German U-boats sank many million pounds of food on its way to the armies and people of Europe. The man in England who had control of food supplies sent a message to Herbert Hoover, who had charge of food in the United States, saying, "We must have seventy-five million bushels of wheat if the war is to be won."

Hoover asked the farmers of America to plant more acres of wheat. He asked the people living here in safety and peace to eat corn meal and rye bread and save the wheat flour for the armies overseas. Many families had boys fighting over there, and everyone was glad to do as Hoover asked. The people of the United States saved sugar in the same way.

After peace came, the people in Europe were starving because their farms had been destroyed. Hoover kept on collecting food, clothing, and money for the suffering ones. In one year he gathered thirty million dollars' worth of needful things for the people across the sea.

Hoover was so capable and honest that our people

believed in him and were ready to do whatever he asked. During the World War he was one of the great leaders in the United States.

Herbert Hoover's parents died when he was young, so he was earning his own living at fourteen. He prepared himself for college by studying in his poor little room back of a real estate office, for he was determined to be a mining engineer.

Herbert Hoover was a leader when he was in college. He helped pay his way by collecting the students' laundry. He was manager of the football team and the glee club, though he took no part in either. He was business manager of the college paper. He used every minute of his time well. In one vacation he did six months' college work. The boys at Stanford University called it "Hoover's luck."

"If those fellows who are always taking about 'Hoover's luck,'" said a professor, "would just stop to think that he works twice as hard as they do, they'd have luck, too."

When Hoover was out of college, at twenty-one, he began as a mining engineer by digging as a common miner at two dollars a day. He then went to a mining engineer's office in San Francisco. From there he was sent far away to Australia, where he opened a gold mine for some rich men in England. Hoover was soon engineer and manager of a group of three large mines.

He was then sent to China, and his life was in danger

WHEN HE WAS AN ENGINEER, HOOVER DID IMPORTANT WORK IN CHINA.

there when the Chinese tried to drive out all the foreigners. Before he was thirty, he was opening and directing mines in many foreign countries. At one time he had fifty thousand men working under him. This experience made him just the man that was needed to get food to the hungry people of Europe.

When the World War broke out, Hoover was in England. Belgium was in ruins after the German army had marched over it, and Hoover was made head of the committee to help the Belgians. After our country entered the war, as you have just learned, he gave his time to the United States as food director during the war.

Not many men could have made a whole nation willing to put themselves on war rations with the boys who fought in the trenches. Herbert Hoover fairly earned the title of the man who "fed the world."

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How was it that Hoover, a poor boy, rose to power and wealth quickly?
2. How was the United States able to furnish so much food in the war?
3. Would you like to be an engineer? Why?

Books You Will Like

Parkman, M. R.—*Heroes of To-Day*, pp. 300-317.
Wade, M. H.—*Real Americans*, pp. 66-112.

JANE ADDAMS AND WELFARE WORK

Imagine yourself the mother of a family, going to live in a strange land, without much money. Suppose that you were going to spend the rest of your life there and that you did not even know how to speak the language well enough to ask for what you wanted. Suppose that you had to live with your family in a few dark rooms with big buildings all about you. Suppose things cost so much that you had to go out to work to help your husband support the family. Would you leave your children alone to play in the streets? What would you do if one of them was very ill?

Then suppose that you knew of a settlement house, where you could study the language and learn the customs of the new land, where there was a day nursery to which you could take your children so that they would be safe until you came home from your day's work. Suppose that there were clubs where you could meet men and women in the evening and classes where your children could study woodwork and sewing. Wouldn't that make you feel happier and more at home? This is what settlement work has done for hundreds of foreign families that have come to America.

In every large city there is to-day at least one settlement house and a group of workers. They go into the homes of the poor and needy. These workers nurse the sick, help people in their troubles, and teach foreigners to understand the ways of our country. This wonderful work grew out of the life dream of a woman named Jane Addams.

Jane Addams was a girl with a motherly heart. She sometimes went from her country home to the great city of Chicago. There she saw many families crowded close together, with no money to pay for anything except poor clothes and food. If they were ill, there was no money to spend in caring for them. Their homes were dark, and the streets in front of their doors were filthy and full of flies. The babies were sick, and many of them died. Then Jane Addams went to Europe on a visit, but always she saw in her dreams a picture of upturned faces, the faces of the poor asking her to help them.

"I must do something about this," said Jane Addams. She and a friend of hers took a big house in the midst of the poor and went there to live. They called it Hull-House. They furnished it comfortably and put their own pictures on the wall and their pretty things about the rooms. Then they invited the poor people to come in and enjoy the fire in the big fireplace and visit with them.

Miss Addams asked rich people and the members of

JANE ADDAMS LIVED IN HULL-HOUSE, IN THE MIDST OF THE POOR.

women's clubs to help her get the things she needed. She went into the homes of the poor and learned what would help them. She taught them ways to help themselves.

She went to the officers of the city and said: "There is disease and filth in our neighborhood. Unless you help me clean it up, it will spread through the city, and everyone will be in danger." In this way Miss Addams worked for better collection of garbage and for cleaner streets. She also worked for better and safer homes for the poor. In New York, you remember, Theodore Roosevelt worked on the same problem.

Out of Miss Addams' devotion and success, welfare work, as it is called, has spread to every city of the United States. Many college girls to-day are learning how to give this kind of service. Doctors and nurses are giving time to clinics, where these poor people may have aid when they are ill. Wealthy men and women are giving their time and money to welfare work. It is reaching into all the crowded districts of our land. The unselfishness of Jane Addams has shown the world how to teach those who are in need to help themselves.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What are some of the troubles foreign families have when they first come to the United States?

2. Why did Jane Addams make it her life work to help the poor?

3. What were some of the evils in Chicago that Jane Addams helped correct?

Books You Will Like

Adams, E. C., and Foster, W. D.—*Heroines of Modern Progress*, pp. 280-307.

Parkman, M. R.—*Heroines of Service*, pp. 297-322.

THOMAS A. EDISON, THE WIZARD INVENTOR

Thomas A. Edison is probably the greatest inventor that ever lived. It is said he has taken out more than a thousand patents on his inventions. Every time you use an electric light bulb or listen to a phonograph or go to see a moving picture, you must thank Edison for giving them to you. He also improved the telephone and the telegraph.

When Edison was a small boy, he asked so many questions that people disliked to see him coming. He was always trying to find out why things were as they were. He made many experiments. In his mother's basement were rows of bottles with different things in them. He put the label "poison" on all the bottles so that no one would touch them.

One day he blew out the side of his mother's stove by putting something on the fire that exploded. Once he set fire to a building in the town where he lived, and he was nearly killed several times with his experiments. If anyone said, "I don't know," Thomas always replied, "Why don't you find out?" The neighbors said that he was a strange boy.

Thomas did not do well at school. If he liked a lesson, he soon learned it; but if he did not like it, he would not work at it. He hated arithmetic and neglected it, and so all his life he had to hire people to work out his problems for him. Often they did not understand what he wanted, and he was disappointed in the answer.

Electricity was just beginning to be used when Edison was a boy. At ten he had read everything he could that was written about it. When he was a young lad, he made a trip on a train every day from Port Huron, Michigan, to Detroit and back, selling papers and candies. He got hold of a printing press and printed a little paper of his own on the train, giving the news of the day. He made money selling it to his many friends along the road.

One day Thomas risked his life by running in front of a moving car to pick up the little son of the station master, who was on the track. The man was so grateful that he offered to teach Edison to use his telegraph instrument. Soon Edison could send messages very well and even thought of some ways to improve the instrument, as we shall hear later.

At last he became a telegraph operator and was ordered to a station where he had to send a dot and dash message every half hour. Once, being very sleepy, he rigged up a clock and attached it to the instrument. Whenever the clock reached the half hour the message

was sent without his help. Then he brought a pillow and some blankets and went to sleep on two chairs. This plan worked very well, until one day the chief tried to send back an answer. Getting no response, he came to the office and found Edison sound asleep. He did not admire the clever plan of the young inventor, and Edison lost his job.

One morning when Edison was about twenty-two, he went into a telegraph office in New York City and asked for work. He had hardly started in when something happened to one of the big machines. The head of the office was much excited, for messages had to go out every minute. While he was hunting for someone to fix the machine, Edison walked over and took a look. He saw a tiny spring was broken. "Let me fix it," he said.

"Fix it if you can," said the head of the office, "and do it quickly."

Edison fixed it promptly. Indeed, he seemed to know so much about electricity that the chief offered him a position at three hundred dollars a month. Edison thought that was so much money that he was afraid he could not earn it. He worked twenty hours a day, and sometimes he stayed up all night.

Edison invented several things to improve the telegraph instruments. One day the president of the company called him in and offered to pay him for the inventions. "How much do you want?" he asked.

Edison wanted very much to ask for five thousand dollars, but he was afraid. He said, "How much do you think they are worth?"

"How would forty thousand dollars do?" asked the president. "I think they are worth that to us."

Edison was very much surprised.

Later Edison discovered a way in which four messages could be sent over a wire at the same time. He also invented a sending instrument that greatly improved the telephone. For this he got one hundred thousand dollars. "Divide it in parts and pay me one part every year; then I shall have enough to live on and can think only of my inventions," he said.

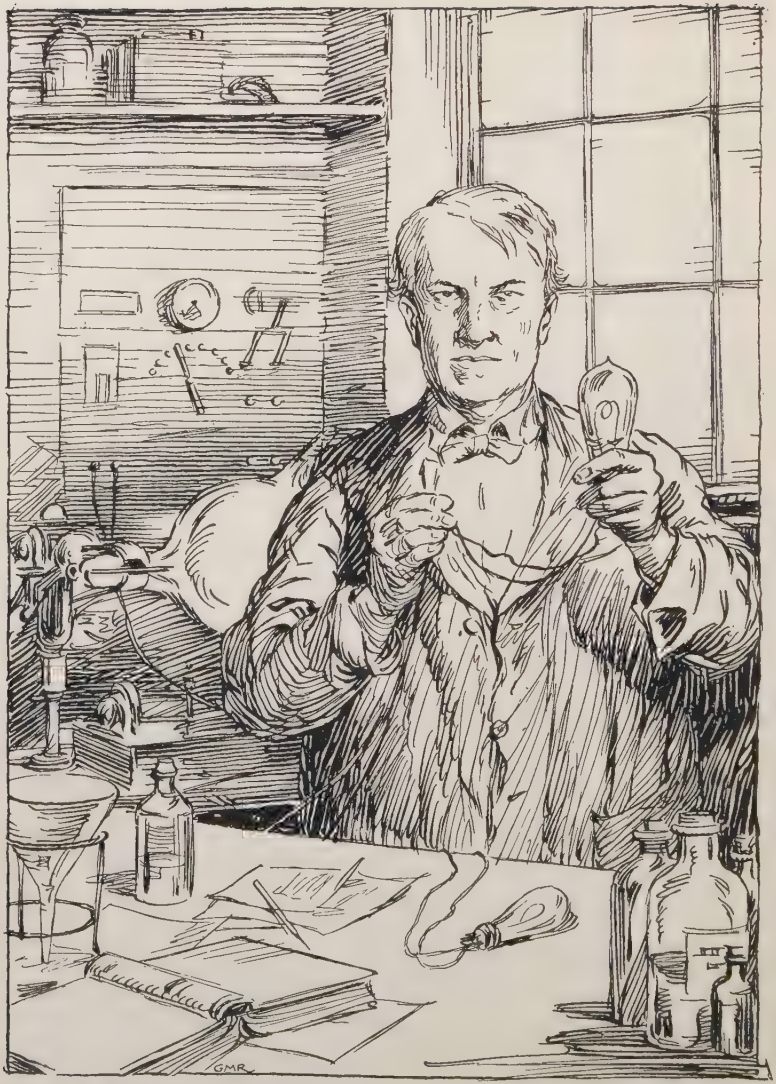
Edison worked day and night at an invention. The men who worked under him found it very hard to keep up, for he could go a long time without sleep and often forgot to eat. His food was brought to the workshop, or laboratory. Many nights Edison seized a pillow and went to sleep for a few hours on a table in his workroom, which was all the rest he got.

One day he told one of his engineers to find the best way to do a certain thing and bring the answer to him. The man worked hard and brought him three different ways of doing it. "This way is the best," he said.

"Is there no other way?" asked Edison.

"No," said the man.

The next morning Edison came to the man's desk



EDISON WORKED MANY YEARS TO FIND THE FINE THREAD THAT GIVES THE LIGHT YOU SEE IN THE ELECTRIC LIGHT BULB.

and showed him fifty-eight different plans for doing the work.

Edison worked six years on the storage battery he invented and made six thousand experiments. He worked many years to find the fine thread that gives the light you see in the electric light bulb. He thought that he ought to have a bamboo fiber for this; so he called to him a teacher who knew a great deal about plants and said: "I want a man to go to the jungles of Africa or Asia and find a plant that will furnish a fiber for my light. Can you go?"

The teacher said that he could.

"Can you go to-morrow?"

"As soon as I can get someone to take my place. How long shall I be away?"

"Maybe six months; maybe five years. Stay until you find the fiber."

A year after this the man came back with a hundred specimens and a very interesting story to tell, but Edison did not listen to it. He met him in the hall one day and said "Hello, did you find it?"

"Yes," said the man proudly.

"Good," said Edison, "but I found something better while you were gone," and walked on.

When Edison said that he could invent a machine that would give back the human voice, even the men in his shops said that he was crazy. But we all know how well he did it in the phonograph.

The machine for taking motion pictures was worked out by Edison. For a long time he believed that the day would come when the voices of the actors on the screen could be heard as they acted in the pictures. As you may know, Edison was right about this, for now a machine has been invented which permits us to hear the sound of music and at the same time see motion pictures of the musicians who played.

During the World War Edison gave his time to our country and made many helpful war inventions.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What do you think was the best thing that ever happened to Edison?
2. Make as long a list as you can of Edison's inventions.
3. What do you think is his greatest invention?
4. Does Edison keep his eye on the clock?

Books You Will Like

Beard, C. A., and Bagley, W. C.—*A First Book in American History*, pp. 343-353.

Holland, R. S.—*Historic Inventions*, Chap. 14.

McFee, Inez—*Stories of American Inventions*, Chap. 7.

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Makers of Progress*, pp. 180-192.

Rolt-Wheeler, Francis—*Thomas A. Edison.*

Tappan, E. M.—*Heroes of Progress*, pp. 199-208.

LUTHER BURBANK, MAKER OF NEW PLANTS

We have been reading about great generals and inventors and leaders of all kinds. A man who has done a great deal to help feed the world in times of peace was the "plant wizard," Luther Burbank.

Most of the useful food plants in the world used to grow wild. When men planted them in better soil and gave them plenty of water and sunshine, their grain, fruit, or roots grew larger and better to eat.

Luther Burbank spent his life trying to make better kinds of vegetables, fruits, and flowers. He did this by taking pollen, or seed food, from one plant and putting it on another. He put together, or *crossed*, those that were already growing and blooming. Perhaps he would use a flower from a far-off country and cross it with another of the same kind here and make a lovelier one.

As a boy, Luther was shy and quiet, but he loved his mother's flowers and his own garden. He tried some experiments in his garden. We know that we usually plant potatoes in the ground to grow others like them. Luther had often done this. One day he found a seed ball on one of his potato plants, filled with very tiny

seeds. "I wonder what kind of potatoes I should get if I planted these potato seeds," thought Burbank.

He saved them very carefully and the next season planted them. From the seeds he got some plants, and on the roots grew several new kinds of potatoes. After he had experimented with them awhile, he took seven new kinds to the county fair. They were called *seedlings* because they were raised from seeds.

A certain seed man who was visiting the fair took a great interest in the new seedling potatoes. He named the finest one the Burbank, and later he bought all Burbank had for one hundred fifty dollars. He gave back a few for seed, and with the money and these potatoes Luther Burbank started from his home in Massachusetts to California. "Here," he said, "I can grow plants the year round."

Near Santa Rosa, California, Burbank built a beautiful home and surrounded it with flowers. Near by were gardens where he carried out thousands of experiments with plants.

As you know, Burbank crossed his plants when they were in blossom. There are two parts to a flower. Tiny stalks called *stamens* are hidden among the petals of the flowers. On the stamens is the yellow powder, called *pollen*, which is necessary for building new seeds. The other part of the flower is the *pistil*, which grows into a seed pod. But this pistil will not grow the seeds unless some of the pollen reaches it.

IT TOOK A LONG TIME TO MAKE A PRICKLY CACTUS INTO A PLANT THAT CATTLE COULD EAT.

The pollen is carried to the pistil in many ways. Sometimes the wind carries it from one flower to another. Sometimes the colored petals or the honey or the perfume of the flower calls the bees and humming birds. The pollen is rubbed off on their wings or beaks and is carried to another flower.

In fields of corn you may see pollen on the tassels. This is sprinkled on the silks of another stalk, and the seed, or kernels, of corn begin to grow. If the two plants are of the same kind, the grain is the same; but if the two plants are different, they are crossed, or mixed. Sometimes when white corn and yellow corn are growing side by side, the new crop has white and yellow kernels on the same ear.

It takes a long time to make experiments with plants. The simple plants must grow from seeds, and it takes at least two years to show much of a change after they are crossed. A new fruit tree takes much longer to show its new fruit.

Burbank hurried up nature's way by carrying pollen from one plant to another. With a penknife and a bit of glass, he took the pollen from one flower to another. Then by using a magnifying glass he put the pollen into the heart of the other flower. He protected this flower from wandering birds and bees by tying a paper bag over it. Then he wrote down in his book just what he had done so that he would remember it the next season.

Did you ever see the beautiful Shasta daisy? It took Burbank eight years to grow this new flower. It was made from the tiny common field daisy, which the farmers call a weed. This wild daisy had very short petals and a yellow center. From Japan Burbank brought a pure white daisy with soft petals and delicate leaves. From England he brought a large daisy with very large coarse petals. These three flowers were none of them beautiful, but by putting them together Burbank produced a marvelous daisy as large as a small sunflower. Then he grew a double daisy by crossing the plants that were most nearly double, and a fringed one by crossing those that had ragged edges on their petals.

Burbank changed the color of the California poppy, which is called "cup-of-gold." He began with one that had a very faint stripe of red. Now we have not only red poppies but straw-colored ones and pure white ones.

When Burbank was a boy in New England, he had a little prickly cactus in a pot. This was a strange sight there. One day he fell down and broke the pot, plant and all. He was very sad about this, for he could not get another. But on the desert in the West he found plenty of cactus plants. In many places on the scorching desert we find them where nothing else will grow. Their long roots reach deep into the earth for moisture. Their juicy leaves take moisture from the air. But they are covered with sharp, prickly spines.

"What good food cactus would be for cattle if it did not have those spines," thought Burbank. "Why not grow some cactus without spines?"

The cactus blossom opens only for an hour or two in the middle of the day. It was hard to work with pollen among those spines. They poisoned Burbank's fingers and made them very sore. It took twice as long to make a prickly cactus into a plant that cattle could eat as it did to make a new daisy, but in sixteen years Burbank succeeded. Not only is the spineless cactus grown and fed to stock, but the fruit also is used for food. Have you ever eaten cactus candy?

Burbank grew a plum without a pit and a kind of blackberry bush without thorns. He also grew a white blackberry!

Once when he had a Japanese plum tree in bloom, he brought to some of its white blossoms pollen from the pink blooms of the apricot tree. The seeds of the fruit were planted, and the new tree bore plumcots. He grew many wonderful new cherries, grapes, and apples. He even grew potatoes on tomato vines, for potatoes and tomatoes belong to the same family.

Burbank improved many kinds of vegetables, but the best known of all came from his first experiment — the Burbank potato. If you will ask your mother at dinner to-night what kind of potatoes you are eating, perhaps she will tell you, "Burbank." It is a favorite potato in the market, and millions of bushels have been

raised in the United States since Luther Burbank grew it first from his little seed ball.

Flowers, grains, and plants without number were made over in Burbank's garden. What he taught the world to do is only a beginning of what will be done in the future by working with plants.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How did Burbank grow the Burbank potato?
2. Why did he move to California?
3. What are the two parts of a flower that unite to form the new seed?
4. Would you rather be a Burbank or an Edison? Give your reasons.

Books You Will Like

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Early Men of Science*, pp. 134-147.
Tappan, E. M.—*Heroes of Progress*, pp. 106-115.

JOHN BURROUGHS, TEACHER OF NATURE'S SECRETS

I know a young man whose proudest boast is that he once went bird hunting with John Burroughs. How happy we should all have been to have this chance, for he was a man whom every child loves. John Burroughs was a great discoverer, but it was not countries, seas, or poles that he discovered. It was many beautiful secrets of nature.

John grew up in the country where he had brooks, flowers, and trees with birds' nests in them all about him. Many other boys have had the same chance and have missed seeing any of these things.

One day John was lying on his back looking up in the tree tops when a tiny bird flew by. It was unlike any bird he had ever seen before. Its back was blue, and its throat was black, but it was smaller than a bluebird. Later he found that it was a black-throated blue warbler on its way to nest in the pine woods of the north. It was a long time before he saw another one.

There were few books about birds in those days, and there was no one to tell John about the many small warblers that eat buds in the tree tops. They are so small and they stay so short a time that most people

JOHN KNEW ALL THE BIRDS NEAR HIS HOUSE AND WHERE THEY NESTED.

never see them. John knew all the birds near his house and where they nested. He wanted to go away to school, but his father could not help him; so he went to a country school near home until he was able to teach.

Years ago thousands of wild pigeons used to fly north in the spring. The sky was sometimes fairly black with them. There were hundreds and hundreds and hundreds of birds. One day a flock settled down in the trees and grass near John's home. The young lad got his gun and aimed it at a group of them; but they were so pretty and blue and cooed so sweetly that he could not bear to pull the trigger. He went home without a single one, and the family laughed at him. They thought nothing of killing pigeons to eat.

John Burroughs was twenty-six years old before he got hold of a book written by the great bird man Audubon (ô′do͝o-bŏn). He said, "I have discovered a new world of joy and wonder." From that time on he studied birds with all his might. Soon he began to write. One book is called *Birds and Bees*, and another, *Wake-Robin*, which is the name of a wild flower.

Burroughs was one of the first to write about the things of nature in such a simple manner that all people could read and understand. He called another book *Winter Sunshine*. "It brings us close to God's wonders," said someone.

Burroughs built a beautiful home on the Hudson

River, called Riverby; but when he wanted to be quite alone, he went to his house far up in the woods, called Slabsides. Here he often stayed alone for weeks and did his own cooking. Theodore Roosevelt visited him there, for they were great friends. At Slabsides Burroughs had quiet to write nature tales.

Later Burroughs enjoyed a trip to Alaska, where he found many new plants and animals. In the West he met another famous nature lover, John Muir. You can guess what a good time they had together. Then imagine John Burroughs and Theodore Roosevelt in Yellowstone Park, crossing snowdrifts on skis.

John Burroughs has taught thousands of people to enjoy the things about them. There are few studies so interesting and so fine as nature study. Even a boy who lives in a big city can go to a museum and study the mounted birds, but the country boy is very lucky, for he has live birds all about him. Working in the fields is not lonely work if one knows how to watch the birds build and how to find squirrels and rabbits. It is easy to know the habits of the bees and to name the wild flowers.

In John Burroughs' day there were plenty of wild flowers and many wild birds, but now there is scarcely a wild pigeon left. The wild flowers are disappearing near the cities. The boys and girls to-day are therefore forming clubs to protect the flowers and birds, because Burroughs has taught many to love them.

John Burroughs was eighty-four years old when he died. During his lifetime he enjoyed nature's beauties. He hunted out her secrets and wrote them down in simple, sweet language for all of us to read. Many great men were his friends, but best of all he loved children, and it was to children he gave his best.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. How would you like a vacation at Slabsides?
2. Why is it easier to learn about birds now than when John was a boy?
3. Make a drawing of Roosevelt and Burroughs on skis in Yellowstone Park.
4. How can boys and girls learn the secrets of nature?

A Book You Will Like

Parkman, M. R.—*Heroes of To-Day*, pp. 25–55.

THE WRIGHT BROTHERS AND THE AIRPLANE

Four hundred years ago a man made himself some wings from birds' feathers and said that he was going to fly across the English Channel from England to France, a distance of about seventy miles. Before he had gone very far, he fell and broke his leg. When they picked him up, he said that his only mistake was in not using eagles' feathers, which are larger and stronger.

Years afterward men experimented with balloons filled with hot air. Such balloons come down quickly when the air cools. Later someone discovered a gas called *hydrogen*. Hydrogen is lighter than air. When it was put into a balloon, the balloon remained in the air as long as one wished. First a cock and a duck and a sheep were sent up in the balloon, and they came down safely. Then men went up. Many years later, when France and Germany were at war, these balloons were sent up over the lines of the enemy so that the men in them could see what was going on.

In 1859 a man traveled in a balloon nine hundred miles in nineteen hours. Then many men began to work seriously on the problem of traveling in the air. Count Zeppelin of Germany built a large airship,

which was called a *Zeppelin*. It was held up like a balloon, but it was driven by two motors big enough to drive a large truck.

It is to the patient work of two brothers who lived in the United States that the honor of perfecting the airplane is due. Orville and Wilbur Wright had a bicycle shop in Dayton, Ohio. They were great chums and always worked together. With two big wheels and some gas pipe, they made a bicycle on which they could both ride. The people of the city were amused when they saw it. The Wrights also made some remarkable kites, which they sent up to find out what happens when the wind changes suddenly. They read about the experiments of a German who made flights in the air. He was killed in one of his flights, but the Wrights learned all they could about his plans for flying. An American named Samuel Langley made an airplane which would stay in the air for a short time. They learned all they could about his machine.

The Wrights studied the birds. They watched especially large ones, like the buzzards, circling in the air. The boys watched the whirls of dust lifted out of the road and the course they took. They argued with each other over every new thing they discovered.

Having made some "gliders," they learned to control the levers. Then they went to the top of a hill near by, entered their glider, and were carried by the wind to the bottom of the slope.

HOW WAS THE WRIGHT BROTHERS' AIRPLANE, WHICH YOU SEE HERE, DIFFERENT FROM AIRPLANES WE HAVE TO-DAY?

At last the Wright boys made a machine having two main planes, or wings, with a rudder behind. They flew it like a kite, holding it by a string, and tested it to see how much lifting power it had. We must remember that the air is never still. Warm waves are rising, and cold waves are falling. There are whirlpools in the air, which shoot now in this direction and now in that. The planes of an airplane must adjust themselves quickly. All these things the Wrights tried to overcome with their machine.

"It will be a thousand years before men are able to fly," said Wilbur Wright one day, almost discouraged. "We know so little about the air."

They noticed that the birds used their wing tips to balance themselves in currents of air, and so they made a machine with movable wing tips. In this machine they made hundreds of trial flights.

The brothers were too busy trying to fly to earn much money. But now their devoted sister, Katherine Wright, was through college and had begun to teach school. She offered all her savings to the boys to aid them. Other friends lent them money. They added a gasoline engine and a propeller to their machine, and then one day they flew for twelve minutes. This was the first time that a machine with an engine had taken the air, flown through it, and come down safely.

It was in 1908 that their great day came and the world learned of their success. Orville Wright flew

for more than half an hour, with many people looking on. The next year a trial flight was made before Government officers and the President of the United States.

Wilbur Wright later made a flight in France and received great honors. He stayed in the air one hour, nine minutes, and forty seconds. Another time Orville was at the wheel while a great crowd in the United States was watching. Orville had been up in the air over an hour; he had stayed past the hour and nine minutes. His brother Wilbur might have been jealous when he saw that Orville was going to do better than he had done in France, but instead he rushed forth and called, "Give him a cheer, men!" and the crowd made the air ring. The loving sister who had done so much to help them was there. She hurried to send a telegram to their dear old father waiting at home in Dayton.

Now airplanes are used for many things. They have crossed the United States without stopping, and they have flown over the ocean. Probably you have all heard about Charles Lindbergh, who flew across the Atlantic Ocean from New York to Paris. Airplanes have reached almost every part of the world. Byrd, you remember, reached the north pole in an airplane. Airplanes were of great use in the World War. Many times in peace they have taken help to dying men when it could reach them in no other way. Uncle Sam now sends mail across our country by airplanes,

and in many countries both freight and passengers are carried in this way. In fact, nearly every day we read that something new has been done with airplanes.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. What makes a balloon go up? A kite?
2. Why do big air balloons come down quickly?
3. How does hydrogen gas keep a balloon in the air?
4. What were some of the hard problems that the Wright brothers solved?
5. What is the difference between a glider and an airplane?
6. What is the difference between an airship and an airplane?
7. Tell about some important airplane flights that have been made lately.

Books You Will Like

Holland, R. S.—*Historic Inventions*, Chap. 14.
Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Makers of Progress*, pp. 106–128.
Parkman, M. R.—*Conquests of Invention*, pp. 325–343.
Wade, M. H.—*Light Bringers*, pp. 112–140.

GUGLIELMO MARCONI AND THE WIRELESS

Many of your grandparents will remember the first time telephones were used. It was Alexander Graham Bell who first made a telephone that would plainly carry the human voice. He built his invention after the manner of the telegraph, which sends dots and dashes by electricity. The sounds, or words spoken in the telephone, are turned into electric waves, which run through wires stretched between two points. Then an instrument at the other end of the wire turns the electric waves back into sounds, or words.

The next step was the wireless telephone, which needs no long wires but, like our radios to-day, has only a receiving wire to catch the air waves that come through space and an instrument to turn them into real sounds.

The man who perfected the sending of signals over great distances without wires was Guglielmo Marconi (mär-kō′nē). Marconi was born in Bologna, Italy, on a country place, but his mother came from Ireland. The lad had a wonderful teacher, who was a great student of science. Together he and Marconi tried out all the experiments they read about, especially with waves of air.

When Marconi was in college, he made experiments

which showed that electric waves could be sent through the air. Marconi set up tall poles to hold his instruments. At last he succeeded in perfecting two delicate instruments. One would send out electric splashes into the air, making waves, and the other received these waves when it was tuned in the right way.

When Marconi was twenty-one, he had sent wireless signals a mile away and dreamed of the day when the air waves would bear messages round the world. He worked on his receiving instrument and found out first one new thing about it and then another. There were many new discoveries in science made by other men, and these helped him. One of the first wireless messages was sent by Queen Victoria of England to her son, who was ill on a ship off the English coast. In 1899 Marconi sent messages across the English Channel from England to France.

After sending signals in England, Marconi started across the sea to America, for he believed that he could send a message from England to America, three thousand miles away. Across the ocean there had been for many years a cable, or long telegraph wire resting on the bottom of the sea; and over this messages were sent. But Marconi was sure that they could be sent without the aid of the cable.

His sending station in England had ten tall poles, with wires strung back and forth. Marconi had told the man in charge of his instrument there to send him

MARCONI WAITED TO RECEIVE THE SIGNAL FROM ACROSS THE OCEAN.

on Thursday, December 12, 1901, three dots, which in telegraph code means the letter S. "Keep on sending the signal every few minutes for three hours," he said.

On December 12th Marconi was on Signal Hill at St. John's, Newfoundland, waiting to receive the signal from across the ocean. He had sent up a large kite to hold his *aerial*, or receiving wire. The wire from the kite passed through the window and was connected with his instrument.

Marconi held the ear phones to his ears anxiously. He thought that he could hear the three clicks, but he was very much excited. When at last he distinctly heard three sharp clicks, he called his assistant to come and listen. Again and again they heard it. Both were certain that they had received the signal from the far coast of England.

Marconi had no way of sending word back except by cable, but very soon the news was flashed all over the world that Marconi had succeeded in sending a wireless message across the Atlantic Ocean.

To-day wireless messages are very common and are received thousands of miles away. Sometimes they are sent out by ships that are in distress. In the World War the wireless played an important part, for airplanes could send in descriptions of the enemy forts so that the gunners could train their guns to destroy them. In this war Marconi served as an officer in the Italian army.

Other inventors using some of Marconi's discoveries have built the wonderful new instrument called the radio. To-day not only signals but words and songs are sent out from broadcasting stations. The talking and music are sometimes heard halfway round the world. Many of you may have had the experience of sitting in your own homes and hearing the President of the United States deliver a speech in Washington.

Easy Tests and Tasks

1. Which do you think is the greater blessing to man, the telephone or the radio? Why?

2. Does sound really pass through a wire? If not, what does?

3. Let some boy explain how his radio works. Locate on the map all the cities you can hear on your radio.

4. Find out who laid the first cable across the Atlantic Ocean.

Books You Will Like

Nida, W. L. and S. H.—*Makers of Progress*, pp. 192–200.
Wade, M. H.—*Light Bringers*, pp. 172–195.

INDEX

A B C's, 12
Abraham, 1
Adams, John, 179–184, 191, 192, 194
Adams, John Quincy, 215
Adams, Samuel, 179–184, 185, 186, 188, 191, 194
Addams, Jane, 371–374
Adventures of Huckleberry Finn, 350
Adventures of Tom Sawyer, 350
Africa, 37, 218, 306–310, 335, 336
Airplanes, 395–398
Airships, 395
Alaska, 342, 393
Alexander the Great, 32–38
Alexandria, 37
Alfred the Great, 57–64
Alphabet, 12
Amazon River, 336
America, 69
Amphitheaters, Roman, 49
Amundsen, Roald, 340–342
Aphrodite, 26, 29
Apollo, 26
Appomattox Courthouse, 296–298
Aqueducts, Roman, 42
Ares, 26
Aristotle, 32
Arkansas River, 263
Asia, 34, 37, 48
Athenians, 16, 19, 21, 22, 24, 25
Athens, 15, 16, 19, 21, 23, 29
Atlantic Ocean, 100, 135
Attila, 52–56
Audubon, J. J., 392
Bacon, Roger, 76
Balloons, 395
Baltic Sea, 64
Baltimore, 196, 197
Barton, Clara, 320–324
Beethoven, Ludwig van, 300–305
Belgium, 98, 370
Bell, Alexander Graham, 400
Biarni, 66–67
Bible, 1, 4, 5, 96
Birds and Bees, 392
Birdwoman, 254–259
Black Prince, 82–84
Bologna, 400
Bonn, 300
Book of Marco Polo, 90, 92
Boone, Daniel, 227–231
Boonesboro, 228
Boston, 145, 148, 166, 179–184, 185–189
Boston Tea Party, 181
Bradford, Governor, 140
Broadcasting, 404
Brutus, 50
Bucephalus, 32, 35, 36
Burbank, Luther, 383–389
Burroughs, John, 335, 390–394
Byrd, Richard, 342, 398

Caesar, Julius, 46–50
California, 267, 273
Canaan, 1–4, 5
Cannon, early use of, 83
Cape Cod, 135
Cape Horn, 114

Caravans, 12
Carnegie, Andrew, 344–349
Carnegie Hero Fund, 348
Carnegie libraries, 349
Carson, Kit, 261–268
Cathay, 89. *See also* China
Caxton, William, 98
Charles II of England, 153–155
Charles VII of France, 84–88
Charlestown, 186, 189
Cheops, 9
Chicago, 7, 372
China, 90, 95, 368, 370
Christ, 9, 71
Christians, 29, 71, 75
City of Seven Hills, 39
Civil War, 278, 279–285, 286–292, 295–299, 321
Clark, George Rogers, 233–238
Clark, William, 250–260
Clemens, Samuel, 350–355
Colorado River, 263
Columbia River, 258, 259, 264
Columbus, Christopher, 69, 92, 100–105
Commandments, Ten, 4–5
Concord, 186–190
Confederate States, 283
Continental Congress, 161, 183, 191–192, 195
Cornwallis, General, 213, 215
Coster, Lourens, 96
Cotton gin, 274–278
Crécy, 82
Creek Indians, 241
Crimea, 316–319
Croatoan, 124
Crusades, 71–76
Cuba, 333, 334, 362

Danes, 57–61, 63, 64
Danube River, 52, 55
Dare, Virginia, 122, 124
Darius, 14–18
Darrah, Lydia, 203–204
Davis, Jefferson, 283
Davis, John, 114
Dawes, William, 186
Declaration of Independence, 171, 192–194
Delaware River, 162
Denmark, 57, 66
De Soto, Hernando, 107–111
Diamond rush, 311
Drake, Sir Francis, 113–119
Duke of York, 150
Dutch, 147–151. *See also* Holland

Edison, Thomas A., 376–382
Edward III of England, 82–84
Egypt, 12, 37, 48, 94, 311, 312
Egyptians, 2, 4, 7–10, 12
Electricity, 171, 377, 381
Elephants in war, 34, 35
Elizabeth, Queen of England, 114, 119, 120–121, 125, 134
Emancipation Proclamation, 284
England, 57, 58, 60–61, 77–81, 82–88, 113–114, 121, 142, 168, 211, 219, 246, 308, 315, 395
English, 57, 87
Ericsson, Leif, 66–69
Europe, 19, 37, 55, 71, 76, 94, 367

Florida, 107, 243
Foch, General, 362
Fort Henry, 202
Fort Sumter, 283
Forty-niners, 272
Fourth of July, 192
France, 12, 48, 55, 71, 72, 82–88, 171, 211, 245–248, 326
Franklin, Benjamin, 166–172, 179, 184, 192, 211

Frémont, John C., 261–268
Frémont Peak, 263

Gage, General, 181
Genoa, 90
George III of England, 170, 185
Germany, 55, 72, 300, 357, 364
Girty, Samuel, 202
Gist, Christopher, 158, 160
Gladiators, 49
Godfrey, 73, 75
Gold rush, 269–273
Golden Hind, 116–119
Gordian knot, 34
Gordium, 34
Grant, Ulysses S., 286–292
Great Basin, 265
Great Charter, 78, 80
Great Falls, 255
Great Salt Lake, 264
Greece, *see* Greeks
Greek gods, 24, 26–27
Greeks, 12, 14–19, 21–30, 38, 44, 96
Greene, Mrs. Nathanael, 274
Greenland, 66, 67, 69, 338–339
Gunpowder, 76, 83–84, 130
Gutenberg, John, 96–98
Guthrum, 59, 60

Hamilton, General, 233–238
Hancock, John, 179–184, 185, 186, 188, 191, 192
Hart, Nancy, 200, 202
Hawkins, Sir John, 114
Haydn, Joseph, 301
Hayes, Molly, 199–200
Hellespont, 19
Henry, Patrick, 174–178, 179, 191, 202, 234
Hephæstus, 26
Hera, 26
Hessian soldiers, 162
Hieroglyphics, 10
History of the World, Raleigh's, 125
Hobomak, 138–139, 140
Holland, 134, 135. *See also* Dutch
Holy City, *see* Jerusalem
Holy Land, 71, 75
Hoover, Herbert C., 367–370
Horatius, 39–41
Hudson, Henry, 147
Hudson River, 147
Hull-House, 372–374
Hundred Years' War, 82–88
Huns, 52–56

Iceland, 66
India, 34, 64
Indians, 69, 107, 124, 129–132, 138, 139–140, 156–157, 158, 361
Indies, 100
Israel, Children of, 4, 5. *See also* Jews
Italy, 12, 39–44, 71, 400

Jackson, Andrew, 240–244
Jacksonville, 243
Jacob, 1–4
James I of England, 125, 129, 142
Jamestown, 125, 127–132, 269
Jefferson, Thomas, 177, 191–194, 234, 250–251, 259
Jerusalem, 5, 64, 71, 72, 73, 75
Jesus, 73
Jews, 1, 4, 5
Joan of Arc, 85–88, 351, 354
John of England, 77–81
Joseph, 1–4

Kaskaskia, 234, 236
Kentucky, 228–231
Key, Francis Scott, 196, 198
Kimberley, 311
Klamath Indians, 264
Knights, 73, 82–84
Kublai Khan, 89

Labrador, 67
Lafayette, 211–215, 364
Langley, Samuel, 396
Langton, Stephen, 78, 80, 81
Latin, 96
League of Nations, 359, 360
Lee, Richard Henry, 191–192, 194
Lee, Robert E., 292, 294–299, 356
Leif the Lucky, 66–69
Leo I, Pope, 55
Lewis, Meriwether, 250–260
Lexington, 188, 190
Life on the Mississippi, 354
Lincoln, Abraham, 279–285
Lindbergh, Charles, 398
Liverpool, 224
Livingstone, David, 306–310
London, 64, 168, 217
Long Island, 150
Louisiana Territory, 248, 250, 260
Lycurgus, 21, 22

Maid of Orleans, 88
Manchester, 224
Mandan Indians, 254, 259
Marathon, 16, 18
Marconi, Guglielmo, 400–404
Marion, Francis, 205–209
Mark Twain, 350–355
Marshall, James, 269–272
Massachusetts, 69
Massasoit, 145
Mayflower, 135, 136
Mediterranean Sea, 1, 8, 10, 14, 43, 46
Mexico, 111, 113, 267, 296
Mexico, Gulf of, 111
Mississippi River, 111, 231, 248, 280, 289, 291
Missouri, 231, 361
Monasteries, 63
Mongols, 90. *See also* Tartars
Moonlight Sonata, 304, 305
Moros, 362
Morris, Robert, 194, 195
Moses, 4–5
Mt. Olympus, 26
Mt. Sinai, 4
Mount Vernon, 161, 215
Mozart, 301
Muir, John, 335, 393
Mummies, 7, 9
Museums, 7

Napoleon, 245–248, 326, 364
New Amsterdam, 147–151
New Orleans, 282
New World, 113, 129
New York, 9, 147–156, 333, 378
Nightingale, Florence, 315–318
Nile River, 7, 9, 37, 94, 308
North America, 107
North Dakota, 254, 331
Northmen, 57, 66
North pole, 338–340, 342
Northwest Territory, 237, 238
Norway, 64, 66, 340, 342
Nova Scotia, 67

Odin, 57
Old Silver Leg, 148
Olympia, 23, 24
Olympus, Mt., 26
Orleans, 55, 84, 87
Ortiz, 107–108
Outram, Benjamin, 223
Oxford University, 311, 314

Palestine, 5, 71
Panama Canal, 334
Papyrus, 10, 94

Parchment, 94
Parson's Cause, 174–175
Pasteur, Louis, 326–329
Peary, Robert E., 338–340
Penn, William (father), 153–154
Penn, William (son), 153–157
Pennsylvania, 156
Pericles, 23
Pershing, John J., 361–365
Persian kings, 14–16
Persians, 16, 19
Persian Wars, 14–20, 23
Peru, 114, 117
Peter the Hermit, 71–73
Pharaohs, 2, 4
Pheidippides, 16, 18
Philadelphia, 156, 161, 166, 168, 169, 183, 191, 192
Philip of Macedon, 32
Philip II of Spain, 113–119
Philosophers, 23
Phoenicians, 10–12, 14
Picture writing, 9–10
Pilgrims, 134–140, 142
Pittsburgh, 158
Plymouth, 136, 145
Plymouth Rock, 138, 139
Pocahontas, 132
Polo brothers, 89, 90
Polo, Marco, 89–92
Poor Richard's Almanac, 170, 171
Porter, Admiral, 290
Portland, Oregon, 259
Porus, King, 34, 35, 36
Poseidon, 26
Potatoes, 121, 383–384, 388–389
Powhatan, 130, 132
Prince and the Pauper, 354
Printing, story of, 94–98, 168
Providence, 145
Provincetown, 135
Prussia, 248
Puritans, 142
Pyramids, 9

Quakers, 153–156, 219, 227

Railroads, 222–226
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 114, 120–125
Rall, Colonel, 162, 164
Red Cross in Peace and War, 324
Red Cross Society, 318, 320–324
Red Sea, 4
Reed, Deborah, 166
Revere, Paul, 185–190
Revolution, American, 161–164, 171, 177, 183, 205, 231, 233
Rheims, 85, 87
Rhode Island, 142–145
Rhodes, Cecil, 311–314
Rhodes scholars, 313, 314
Rhodesia, 312
Richmond, 284, 292
Roanoke, 122
Rocky Mountains, 248, 250–258, 265
Rolfe, John, 132
Romans, 39–44, 52, 55
Rome, 39–44, 46, 48, 49, 55
Romulus, 39
Roosevelt, 339
Roosevelt, Theodore, 330–337, 393
Ross, Betsy, 195–196
Ross, George, 195
Rough Riders, 333, 334
Roughing It, 354
Runnymede, 78
Russia, 246, 315

Sagas, 69
St. Helena, 248
St. John's, 403
St. Louis, 251, 261
Salem, 142

Samoset, 138
San Francisco, 270–272
San Juan, 334
Santa Fe Trail, 267
Santa Rosa, 384
Scott, Capt. Robert, 340–342
Scott, General, 290
Scott, T. A., 344–345, 347, 348
Sharp, Granville, 217–218
Sherman, General W. T., 292
Sidon, 10
Sinai, Mt., 4
Sioux Indians, 252
Slavery, 217–221, 277, 282
Smith, Captain John, 127–132
Socrates, 27–30
Somerset, 217–218
South, before Civil War, 277
South America, 107, 113, 114, 336
South Carolina, 265
South Dakota, 331
South pole, 340–342
Spain, 48, 107, 125
Spaniards, 113–114, 134
Sparta, 15, 16, 21, 23
Spartans, 16, 21, 22, 24
Spice Islands, 100
Squanto, 138
Stamp Act, 170–171, 179
Standish, Miles, 134–140
Standish, Rose, 139
Stanley, Henry M., 310
Star-Spangled Banner, 196, 198
Stephenson, George, 222–226
Stuyvesant, Peter, 147–151
Sutter, Captain, 267, 269–272
Sweden, 64

Tartars, 90, 92
Thames River, 64
Themistocles, 19
Theodore River, 337
Thor, 57
Tiber River, 39, 41
Tobacco, 121, 132
Trenton, 162
Trinidad, Colorado, 268
Troy, 98
Turks, 71–73, 75
Tyre, 10

U-boats, 362, 367
United States, 120–216, 227–244, 250–299, 320–324, 330–340, 344–399
Ur, 1

Vaccination, 329
Venice, 89–90
Vicksburg, 289–292
Victoria, Queen of England, 318, 401
Victoria Falls, 308
Vikings, 66–69
Vincennes, 236
Vinland, 69
Virginia, 122, 125, 158, 174–177, 294

Wake-Robin, 392
War elephants, 35
War of 1812, 196, 243
Washington, George, 158–164, 191, 195, 200, 204, 212, 213
Washington, Martha, 161
Waterloo, 248
Wessex, 58, 59
Westminster Abbey, 310, 318
West Point, 287, 295, 361
White, Captain, 122, 124
White Sea, 64
Whitney, Eli, 274–278
Wilberforce, William, 219–221
Williams, Roger, 142–145
Wilson, Woodrow, 356–360, 362, 365

Winchester, 63
Winter Sunshine, 392
Wireless messages, 400–404
World War, 75, 324, 357–360, 382, 398
Wright brothers, 395–399
Wright, Orville, 395–399
Wright, Wilbur, 395–399
Writing, 9–10, 12

Xantippe, 29
Xerxes, 18, 19

Yellowstone River, 259, 263
York, Duke of, 150
Yorktown, 213, 215

Zane, Elizabeth, 202–203
Zeppelin, Count, 395
Zeus, 24, 26, 29